

AN
ENGLISH GRAMMAR
FOR THE
LATIN TONGUE:

CONTAINING THE
R U D I M E N T S,
Upon the PLAN of the
COMMON ACCIDENCE;

The Defects whereof are supplied,

FIRST,

By a few Alterations, and some Additions, chiefly in the
Syntax :

SECONDLY,

By *A Companion to the Rudiments*, consisting of fundry
Articles containing the Definitions of Grammar and
its Parts; of Letters, Syllables, Words, Sentences,
Points and Accents; short, plain and comprehensive
Rules for Nouns and Verbs, with the Exceptions to
be learned by Way of Vocabulary; Figurative Syntax,
and Profody; with Rules for Making and Construing
Latin.

Being a sufficient Foundation for a good Understanding of the
ENGLISH, as well as the LATIN TONGUE.

*Collected from the Works of several very eminent Grammarians, and
adapted to the Use of Schools; and also of those Gentlemen, who
having neglected their Classical Learning, are desirous to retrieve it.*

Ne quis tanquam parva fastidiat Grammatices elementa. *Quintil.*

L I V E R P O O L :

Printed by JOHN SADLER; for S. ROBINSON, in *Tythebarn-street*,
of whom it may be had; or of Messrs. ANSDALL, WILLIAMSON,
GORE, and SIBBALD, Booksellers, in LIVERPOOL. 1765.

Price bound 2s.



P R E F A C E.

*T*HE knowledge of the Latin tongue, among other advantages, certainly contributes very much to a good understanding of the English; prepares youth for a speedy attainment of the French and other modern languages, and facilitates their progress in Mathematics, Philosophy, History, and other branches of useful learning.

But, the slow progress youth commonly make in this valuable language, has induced many people to think, that the advantages derived from it, are not equivalent to the time, pains and expence bestowed in the acquisition of it; and not a few are so strongly prejudiced against the learning of Latin, as to look upon it as useless and unnecessary; but they do not consider how much pains is required, and how much time must necessarily be spent by a mere English scholar in consulting Dictionaries, before he can learn, and retain in his memory, the proper signification and meaning of a multitude of words frequently to be met with in most English books of Divinity, History, Morality, &c. in which even a small acquaintance with the Latin would greatly assist him.

Besides, the practice of investigating and finding out the sense of a Latin author, translating, and applying the rules of Grammar, habituates young minds to a close way of thinking, and improves their faculties more than is commonly apprehended; especially when assisted by a proper set of rules, and under the direction of an able and diligent tutor: A

Grammar for the English tongue, how well-soever contrived and executed, cannot be made to answer effectually the purposes above-mentioned.

The common Grammar has been greatly complained of, as being, by the language, prolixity and insufficiency of its rules, the main occasion of the slow progress youth usually make in the Latin tongue; and attempts have been made, by many persons well skilled in that sort of learning, to accomodate the public with a more useful one; but nothing of that kind has hitherto met with general approbation, and Lily continues to be taught in most schools in this part of the kingdom.

As the following sheets contain the rudiments in the form and language of the common Accidence, with a few alterations, being little more than those in the Eaton impression, it is hoped, no inconvenience will arise from the use thereof, to masters or scholars who have taught or learned the common Accidence and Grammar.

Instead of the young learner being put upon the tedious task of getting by heart the rules of Propria quae maribus, Quae genus, and As in praesenti, or any other latin rules, so early as is commonly practised, he is here provided with a Companion to the Rudiments, containing a few rules (mostly) in English, for the declension and gender of nouns, heteroclites, conjugation, perfect tense and supine of verbs, &c. to be got by heart, and the exceptions to be learned by way of a vocabulary, in a set of Articles; some of which, especially the second, third, fourth, fifth and tenth, together with the general and special rules for the gender, at the end of the construction, may properly be taught him before he enters upon syntax.

In the syntax the defects of the common English construction are supplied, chiefly from the Latin one: The examples, though few and short, were thought sufficient, as ^{Books} the English examples to Latin syntax commonly made use of in schools, as Clarke's, Turner's, &c. abound with larger ones collected from the classics.

It may be convenient for the learner, when he gives an account of the exceptions to the rule under Article the second, to read the Latin words and give the English, being under cover,

cover, to each word, and to say the genitive case along with the nominative: The same method may be followed with regard to the examples and exceptions under Article the third, adjectives of defective and irregular comparison; in the verbs, with the perfect supine and english under cover, deponents, signification and examples of prepositions in composition, verbs defective and redundant, the several classes of words under the particular observations on the declensions, &c. in all which the first word of every title is a pattern for the rest, and when there is any difference, the genitive case or other variation is added.—This will save him a great deal of trouble in getting and keeping in mind a multiplicity of rules and exceptions, and furnish him with a larger stock of words in half the time.

An ingenious and accurate Grammarian has observed, that it is scarce possible any rules should be plain to children, how well soever contrived, and in what manner soever disposed, and therefore recommends, as the most rational and effectual method of teaching Grammar, for the master to read to his scholar so much as he judges fit at a time, and to require the scholar to read it after him with exactness; at the same time explaining it to him, and by familiar questions making him to understand the meaning and use thereof; by this means the right sounds, joined with some useful sense, will more readily pass into the mind, be better retained, and applied to use with more advantage than can be expected from the common methods of getting Grammar.

T H E C O N T E N T S O F T H E

Companion to the Rudiments.

ARTICLE	Page
I. <i>Of Grammar and its Parts; of Letters, Syllables, Words, Sentences, Points and Accents</i>	57
II. <i>To know the Declension of a Noun</i>	61
III. <i>To know the Genitive of the third Declension</i>	64
IV. <i>General Observations on the Declensions</i>	67
V. <i>Rules for the Gender by the Termination, with Exceptions</i>	68
VI. <i>Latin Words in the Exceptions englished</i>	70
VII. <i>Numerals, with rules for placing them</i>	73
VIII. <i>Adjectives not compared, defective, and irregular</i>	75
IX. <i>Pronouns compounded</i>	79
X. <i>To know the Conjugation, Perfect Tense and Supines of Verbs</i>	80
XI. <i>Of compound Verbs, and the Signification of Prepositions in Composition</i>	88
XII. <i>Of Verbs defective and redundant</i>	92
XIII. <i>Particular Observations on the Declensions</i>	94
XIV. <i>Of Heteroclite Nouns</i>	99
XV. {	107
	109
	112
XVI. <i>Examples of the Syntax construed, with the radical Words</i>	113
XVII. <i>Of Prosody</i>	124

☞ These Articles may also very properly be used as a Companion to the Common Accidence, or any other Rudiments the Master may choose to make use of.

A S H O R T
I N T R O D U C T I O N
T O T H E
L A T I N T O N G U E.

The Latin Letters, in Number 25, are thus written ;

Capitals.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

Small or common.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

Six Letters are Vowels, *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The rest are Consonants.

A Vowel makes a full and perfect sound of itself; but a Consonant cannot sound without a Vowel.

Consonants are divided into Mutes and Semivowels.

Of Semivowels, four are Liquids, *l, m, n, r*; three double letters, *j, x, z*; *s* is a mere Semivowel — The remaining letters are called Mutes * *K, Y* and *Z*, are found only in words originally Greek. — *H* is only a hard breathing.

A Diphthong is a mixt sound of two Vowels.

Diphthongs are five; *ae, oe, au, eu, ei*; but *ae*, and *oe* lose the sound of the first Vowel.

Of letters are made *Syllables*; of syllables *Words* which are the Signs of our Thoughts.

A Syllable is the sound of a Vowel, or Diphthong with or without Consonants.

Words put together make Sentences, and are divided into several Classes, called Parts of Speech.

* Mutes, so called, because they make no sound at all without a vowel.

THE Parts of Speech are Eight.

1. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle, declined, that is, varied in their ending †.

2. Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection, undeclined, or not varied in their ending.

OF A N O U N.

A NOUN signifies the Name, or the quality of a thing.

Nouns are of two kinds, Substantives and Adjectives.

A noun substantive is the Name of a Thing, and requires not another word to be joined to it, to shew its meaning, and has commonly *a*, *an*, or *the* before it: as *homo* a man, *angelus* an angel, *liber* the book.

A noun adjective signifies some quality or property of a Thing, ‡ and requires to be joined with a substantive: as, *bonus puer*, a good boy, *malus puer*, a naughty boy.

A noun substantive is twofold; *Proper* and *Appellative*: ||

Proper is the name of one particular of a kind; as *Georgius*, George, *Anglia*, England, *Londonium*, London.—*Appellative* is common to all of the same kind, as, *vir*, a man, *regnum*, a kingdom, *urbs*, a city.

Numbers of N O U N S

N O U N S have two Numbers; the singular and the plural.

The singular number speaketh but of one; as, *lapis*, a stone. The plural number speaketh of more than one; as, *lapides*, stones.

Cases of N O U N S.

N O U N S have six Cases in each number; The nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, the vocative, and the ablative.

The nominative case cometh before the verb, and answereth to the question, *who?* or *what?* as, *who teaches?* *magister docet*, The master teaches.

† The variations or changes to which words are subject, are called by the general name of *Accidents*: the *Accidents* of a Noun, and a Pronoun are five, viz. *Number*, *Case*, *Gender*, *Declension*, and *Person*: *Comparison* is also an Accident belonging to Adjectives and Adverbs.

‡ If the word *Thing* be put after an Adjective, it will make sense; after a Substantive, nonsense.

|| An Adjective is also either *Proper*, as *Trojanus*, of Troy: or *Appellative*, as, *urbano*, dwelling in a city.

The genitive case is known by the sign *of* before it, (or by the letter *s* after it, in this manner, (*'s*) and answereth to the question, *whose?* or *whereof?* as, *whose learning?* *doctrina magistri*, the learning of the master, or the master's learning.

The dative case is known by the sign *to*, or *for*, and answereth to the question, *to whom?* or *to* or, *for what?* as, *to whom do I give the book?* *do librum magistro*, I give the book to the master.

The accusative case follows the verb, or a preposition serving to the accusative; and answereth to the question *whom?* or *what?* as, *whom do you love?* *amo magistrum*, I love the master.

The vocative case is known by calling, or speaking to; as, *ô magister*, o master.

The ablative case is known by prepositions, expressed, or understood, serving to the ablative: as, *de magistro*, of the master; *coram magistro*, before the master.

Also, *in*, *with*, *from*, *by*, and the word *than* after the comparative degree, are signs of the ablative case.

G E N D E R S A N D A R T I C L E S.

G E N D E R S of nouns are three; the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter, denoted by the articles, *hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, which are thus declined;

	Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nominative	<i>Hic</i> ,	<i>Haec</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> ,	Nom.	<i>Hi</i> ,	<i>hae</i> ,	<i>haec</i> ,
Genitive	<i>hujus</i> ,	<i>hujus</i> ,	<i>hujus</i> ,	Gen.	<i>horum</i> ,	<i>harum</i> ,	<i>eorum</i> ,
Dative	<i>huic</i> ,	<i>huic</i> ,	<i>huic</i> ,	Dat.	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,
Accusative	<i>hunc</i> ,	<i>hanc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> ,	Accus.	<i>hos</i> ,	<i>has</i> ,	<i>haec</i> ,
Vocative	<i>caret</i> ,			Voc.	<i>caret</i> ,		
Ablative	<i>hoc</i> ,	<i>hac</i> ,	<i>hac</i> ,	Abl.	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i> ,	<i>his</i>

Nouns declined with *hic*, and *haec*, are called common, that is, are of the masculine, and feminine gender; as, *hic*, and *haec* *parens*, a parent, father or mother.

Nouns are called doubtful, when declined with *hic*, or *haec*: as, *hic*, or *haec* *anguis*, a snake.

Some nouns under one article signify both sexes, and are called epicene: as, *hic* *pater*, a father; *haec* *aquila*, an eagle, both male and female.

Declension of NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

DECLENSIONS are five, and may be distinguished by the ending of the nominative case singular :

R U L E.

Ist.-a. IId.-ir,-us,-um,-ster,-ander, with-us,-er, Adjective.
IVth.-u, and all in -sus,-tus,-xus, proper names excepted.
Vth.-ies, with res, spes, fides. IIId.-ma and all others. *

Obs. 1. The genitive of the first declension ends in *ae*, the second in *i*, the third in *is*, the fourth in *us*, the fifth in *ei*.

Obs. 2. Most cases in the singular number, and all in the plural, are formed from the genitive case singular.

I. The first Declension.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>haec</i>	Mus a, a song,	N. <i>hae</i>	Mus-ae, songs,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Mus-ae, of a song,	G. <i>harum</i>	Mus-arum, of songs,
D. <i>huic</i>	Mus-ae, to a song,	D. <i>his</i>	Mus-is, to songs,
A. <i>hanc</i>	Mus am, a song,	A. <i>has</i>	Mus-as, songs,
V. <i>ô</i>	Mus a, o song,	V. <i>ô</i>	Mus-ae, o songs,
A. <i>ab hac</i>	Mus-a, from a song.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Mus-is, from songs.

Obs. *Filia, nata, equa*, make the dative and ablative cases plural in *is*, or in *abus*. *Dea, mula, liberta*, in *abus* only.

II. The second Declension.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>hic</i>	Magist-er, a master,	N. <i>hi</i>	Magistr-i, masters,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Magistr-i, of a master,	G. <i>horum</i>	Magistr-orum, of masters,
D. <i>huic</i>	Magistr-o, to a master,	D. <i>his</i>	Magistr-is, to masters,
A. <i>hunc</i>	Magistr um, a master,	A. <i>hos</i>	Magistr-os, masters,
V. <i>ô</i>	Magist er, o master,	V. <i>ô</i>	Magistr-i. o masters,
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Magistr-o, by a master.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Magistr-is, by masters.

Obs. When the nominative ends in *us*, the vocative singular ends in *e*; except *Deus*, God, that maketh *o Deus*.

* For the exceptions to this rule, see Comp. Art. II.

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	<i>hic</i> Domin-us, a lord	N.	<i>hi</i> Domin-i, lords,
G.	<i>hujus</i> Domin-i, of a lord,	G.	<i>hor.</i> Domin-orum, of lords,
D.	<i>huic</i> Domin-o, to a lord,	D.	<i>his</i> Domin-is, to lords,
A.	<i>hunc</i> Domin-um, a lord,	A.	<i>hos</i> Domin-os, lords,
V.	<i>ô</i> Domin-e, o lord,	V.	<i>ô</i> Domin-i, o lords,
A.	<i>ab hoc</i> Domin-o, by a lord,	A.	<i>ab his</i> Domin-is, by lords.

Obs. When the nominative ends in *ius*, if it be a proper name of a man, the vocative shall end in *i*; as, *Nominative hic Georgius*, *Voc. ô Georgi*; also *filius*, a son, maketh *ô fili*; and *genius*, a genius, *ô ge*.

Not. Nouns of the neuter gender are generally of the second or third declension, and make the nominative, the accusative, and the vocative alike in both numbers, and in the plural number these cases shall all in *a*; as in example.

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	<i>hoc</i> Regn-um, a kingdom	N.	<i>haec</i> Regn-a, kingdoms,
G.	<i>hujus</i> Regn-i, of a kingdom,	G.	<i>hor.</i> Regn-orum, of kingdoms
D.	<i>huic</i> Regn-o, to a kingdom,	D.	<i>his</i> Regn-is, to kingdoms,
A.	<i>hoc</i> Regn-um, a kingdom,	A.	<i>haec</i> Regn-a, kingdoms,
V.	<i>ô</i> Regn-um, o kingdom,	V.	<i>ô</i> Regn-a, o kingdoms,
A.	<i>ab hoc</i> Regn-o, from a kingdom	A.	<i>ab his</i> Regn-is, from kingdoms.

III. The third Declension.

Singular.		Plural.	
N.	<i>haec</i> Nub-es, a cloud,	N.	<i>haec</i> Nub-es, clouds,
G.	<i>hujus</i> Nub-is, of a cloud,	G.	<i>har.</i> Nub-ium, of clouds,
D.	<i>huic</i> Nub-i, to a cloud,	D.	<i>his</i> Nub-ibus, to clouds,
A.	<i>hanc</i> Nub-em, a cloud,	A.	<i>has</i> Nub-es, clouds,
V.	<i>ô</i> Nub-es, o cloud,	V.	<i>ô</i> Nub-es, o clouds,
A.	<i>ab hac</i> Nub-e, from a cloud,	A.	<i>ab his</i> Nub-ibus, from clouds.

Obs. Many nouns in this declension increase in the genitive, as in the following examples. †

† See more of these in the Companion, Art. III.

Singular.

<i>Singular.</i>	
N. <i>hic</i>	Lap-is, a stone,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Lapid-is, of a stone,
D. <i>huic</i>	Lapid-i, to a stone,
A. <i>hunc</i>	Lapid-em, a stone,
V. <i>ô</i>	Lap-is, o stone,
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Lapid-e, from a stone,

<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hi</i>	Lapid-es, stones,
G. <i>hor.</i>	Lapid-um, of stones,
D. <i>his</i>	Lapid-ibus, to stones,
A. <i>hos</i>	Lapid-es, stones.
V. <i>ô</i>	Lapid es, o stones,
A. <i>ab his</i>	Lapid-ibus, from stones

<i>Singular.</i>	
N. <i>hoc</i>	Op-us, a work,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Oper-is, of a work,
D. <i>huic</i>	Oper-i, to a work,
A. <i>hoc</i>	Op-us, a work,
V. <i>ô</i>	Op-us, o work,
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Oper-e, from a work,

<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>haec</i>	Oper-a, works,
G. <i>hor.</i>	Oper-um, of works,
D. <i>his</i>	Oper-ibus, to works,
A. <i>haec</i>	Oper-a, works,
V. <i>ô</i>	Oper-a, o works,
A. <i>ab his</i>	Oper-ibus, from works

<i>Singular.</i>	
N. <i>hic</i> } <i>et haec</i> }	Parens, a parent,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Parent-is, of a parent,
D. <i>huic</i>	Parent-i, to a parent,
A. <i>hunc</i> } <i>et hanc</i> }	Parent-em, a parent,
V. <i>ô</i>	Parens, o parent,
A. <i>ab hoc</i> } <i>et hac</i> }	Parent-e, by a parent

<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hi</i> } <i>et hae</i> }	Parent-es, parents,
G. <i>hor.</i> } <i>et har.</i> }	Parent-um, of parents,
D. <i>his</i>	Parent ibus, to parents,
A. <i>hos</i> } <i>et has</i> }	Parent-es, parents,
V. <i>ô</i>	Parent-es, o parents,
A. <i>ab his</i>	Parent-ibus, by parents.

IV. The fourth Declension.

<i>Singular.</i>	
N. <i>hic</i>	Grad us, a step,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Grad-ûs, of a step,
D. <i>huic</i>	Grad-ui, to a step,
A. <i>hunc</i>	Grad-um, a step,
V. <i>ô</i>	Grad-us, o step,
A. <i>ab hoc</i>	Grad-u, from a step.

<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hi</i>	Grad-us, steps,
G. <i>hor.</i>	Grad-uum, of steps,
D. <i>his</i>	Grad-ibus, to steps,
A. <i>hos</i>	Grad-us, steps,
V. <i>ô</i>	Grad-us, o steps,
A. <i>ab his</i>	Grad-ibus, from steps.

V. The fifth Declension.

<i>Singular.</i>	
N. <i>haec</i>	Faci-es, a face,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Faci-ei, of a face,
D. <i>huic</i>	Faci-ei, to a face,
A. <i>hanc</i>	Faci-ent, a face,
V. <i>ô</i>	Faci-es, o face,
A. <i>ab hac</i>	Faci-e, from a face.

<i>Plural.</i>	
N. <i>hae</i>	Faci-es, faces,
G. <i>har.</i>	Faci-erum, of faces,
D. <i>his</i>	Faci-ebus, to faces,
A. <i>has</i>	Faci-es, faces,
V. <i>ô</i>	Faci-es, o faces,
A. <i>ab his</i>	Faci-ebus, from faces.

Declension

Declension of NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

A Noun adjective is declined with three terminations, as, *bonus*, good, *niger*, black ; or with three articles, as in the following examples :

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bo-nus,	bon-a,	bon-um	N. Bon-i,	bon-ae,	bon-a
G. Bon-i,	bon-ae,	bon i,	G. Bon-orum,	bon-arum,	bon-
D. Bon o,	bon-ae,	bon-o,	D. Bon-is,	(orum,	
A. Bon um,	bon-am,	bon-um	A. Bon-os,	bon-as,	bon-a,
V. Bon-e,	bon-a,	bon-um	V. Bon-i,	bonae,	bon-a,
A. Bon-o,	bon-â,	bon-o,	A. Bon-is,	bon is,	bon-is.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Nig-er,	nig-ra,	nig-rum	N. Nig-ri,	nig-rae,	nig-ra,
G. Nig-ri,	nig-rae,	nig-ri,	G. Nig-rorum,	nig rarum,	nig-
D. Nig-ro,	nig-rae,	nig-ro,	D. Ni-gris	(rorum,	
A. Nig-rum,	nig-ram,	nig-rum	A. Nig-ros,	nig-ras,	nig-ra,
V. Nig-er,	nig-ra,	nig-rum	V. Nig-ri,	nig-rae,	nig-ra,
A. Nig-ro,	nig-râ,	nig-ro,	A. Nig-ris.		

Obs. The masculine and neuter genders of adjectives of three endings, are declined like substantives of the second declension ; the feminine like substantives of the first declension.

Unus, one, *solus*, alone, *totus*, the whole, *alius** another, *alter*, the other, *ulius*, any, *nullus*, none, *uter*, either, *neuter*, neither, make the genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i* ; as in example.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Un-us,	un-a,	un-um,	N. Un-i,	un-ae,	un-a,
G. Un-ius,			G. Un-orum,	un-arum,	un-o-
D. Un-i,			D. Un-is,		rum,
A. Un-um,	un-am,	un-um,	A. Un-os,	un-as,	un-a,
V. Un-e,	un-a,	un-um,	V. Un-i,	un-ae,	un-a,
A. Un-o,	un-â,	un-o,	A. Un-is.		

* *Alius* hath *aliud* neuter ; *alter*, in the genitive, is founded *alterius* ; *alius*, *alter*, *nullus*, *neuter*, want the vocative case.

A Noun Adjective of three Articles, s declined after the third Declension of Substantives; as, *tristis*, sad, *melior*, better, *felix*, happy.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>hic et hæc</i>	} Trist-is, <i>hæc</i> trist-e,	N. <i>hi et hæc</i>	} Trist-es, <i>hæc</i> trist-ia,
G. <i>hujus</i>		G. <i>horum</i>	
D. <i>huic</i>	Trist-i,	D. <i>his</i>	Trist-ibus.
A. <i>hunc et hanc</i>	} Trist-em, <i>hæc</i> trist-e	A. <i>hos et has</i>	} Trist-es, <i>hæc</i> trist-ia,
V. <i>ô</i>		V. <i>o</i>	
A. <i>ab hæc hæc</i>	} Trist-i,	A. <i>ab his</i>	} Trist-es et trist-ia, Trist-ibus.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>hic et hæc</i>	} Meli-or, <i>hæc</i> meli-us,	N. <i>hi et hæc</i>	} Meli-ores, <i>hæc</i> meli-ora,
G. <i>hujus</i>		G. <i>horum</i>	
D. <i>huic</i>	Meli-ori,	D. <i>his</i>	Meli-oribus,
A. <i>hunc et hanc</i>	} Meli-orem <i>hæc</i> meli- (us	A. <i>hos et has</i>	} Meli-ores, <i>hæc</i> meli-ora,
V. <i>o</i>		V. <i>o</i>	
A. <i>ab hæc hæc</i>	} Meli-ore vel meli-ori,	A. <i>ab his</i>	} Meli-ores et meli-ora Meli-oribus.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>hic et hæc</i>	} Fel-ix,	N. <i>hi et hæc</i>	} Feli-ces, <i>hæc</i> feli-cia,
G. <i>hujus</i>		G. <i>horum</i>	
D. <i>huic</i>	Feli-ci,	D. <i>his</i>	Feli-cibus.
A. <i>hunc et hanc</i>	} Feli-cem, <i>hæc</i> fel-ix,	A. <i>hos et has</i>	} Feli-ces, <i>hæc</i> feli-cia,
V. <i>o</i>		V. <i>o</i>	
A. <i>ab hæc hæc</i>	} Feli-ce, vel feli-ci,	A. <i>ab his</i>	} Feli-ces et feli-cia, Feli-cibus.

Ambō, both, and *duo* two, are Nouns adjective, and are thus declined in the Plural Number only.

N.	Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	both.
G.	Amb-orum,	amb-arum,	amb-orum,	of both.
D.	Amb-obus,	amb-abus,	amb-obus,	to both.
A.	Amb-os,	amb-as,	amb-o,	both.
V.	Amb-o,	amb-a,	amb-o,	both.
A.	Amb-obus,	amb-abus,	amb-obus,	with both.

COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVES comparable are such whose signification may be increased or lessened.

Degrees of signification are three; the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

The *positive* barely expresses the quality of a thing, without increasing or lessening it; as, *durus*, hard, *brevis*, short.

The *comparative* encreases or lessens the quality; as, *durior*, harder, *brevior*, shorter, and is formed of the first case of the *positive* that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or*, masculine and feminine, and *us* in the neuter gender; as,

Of *durus*, gen. *duri*, is formed *hic et hæc*, *durior*, *hoc durius*.

brevis, dat. *brevi*, is formed *hic et hæc*, *brevior*, *hoc brevius*.

The sign of the *comparative* in English is *er*, added to the *positive*, or the word *more* put before it; as harder, or, more hard, shorter, or, more short.

The *superlative* encreases or diminishes the signification, or comparison, to the highest degree, as *durissimus*, hardest, *brevissimus*, shortest, and is formed of the first case of the *positive* that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimus*; as,

Of gen. *duri* is formed *durissimus*; of dat. *brevi* is formed *brevissimus*.

The sign of the *superlative* in English is *est*, added to the *positive*, or *most* or *very* put before it; as, hardest, most or very hard; shortest, most or very short.

Obs. From these general rules are excepted these that follow.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.
Bonus, <i>good</i> ,	melior, <i>better</i> ,	optimus, <i>best</i> .
Malus, <i>bad</i> ,	pejor, <i>worse</i> ,	pessimus, <i>worst</i> .
Magnus, <i>great</i> ,	major, <i>greater</i> ,	maximus, <i>greatest</i> .
Parvus, <i>little</i> ,	minor, <i>less</i> ,	minimus, <i>least</i> .
Multus, <i>much</i> ,	plus, <i>more</i> ,	plurimus, <i>most</i> .

For other irregulars and defectives, *vid.* Compan. artic. viii.

Adjectives ending in *er*, form the superlative from the nominative case, by adding *rimus*; as, *pulcher*, fair; *pulcherrimus*, fairest, or most fair.

Adjectives in *lis* form the superlative according to the general rule; as, of *utilis*, useful, dat. *utili*, is formed *utilissimus*, most useful: except the following, which change *is* into *imus*, as,

Agilis, <i>nimble</i> ,	Agillimus, <i>nimblest</i> .
Facilis, <i>easy</i> ,	Facillimus, <i>easiest</i> .
Gracilis, <i>slender</i> ,	Gracillimus, <i>slenderest</i> .
Humilis, <i>low</i> ,	Humillimus, <i>lowest</i> .
Similis, <i>like</i> ,	Simillimus, <i>likeliest</i> .

The positive ending in *us* pure, forms the comparative, by adding *magis*, more, or *minus*, less; and the superlative, by adding *maximè*, most, or *minimè*, least; as,

Idóneus, fit; *magis idóneus*, more fit; *minus idóneus*, less fit;
maximè idóneus, most fit; *minimè idóneus*, least fit.

Of a PRONOUN.

A Pronoun is used instead of a noun, and is declined with number, case, and gender.

There are fifteen Pronouns.

Ego,	<i>I</i> ;	iste,	<i>that</i> ;	suus,	<i>his</i> ;
tu,	<i>thou</i> ;	hic,	<i>this</i> ;	noster,	<i>ours</i> ;
sui,	<i>of himself</i> ;	is,	<i>he</i> ;	vester,	<i>yours</i> ;
ille,	<i>he</i> ;	meus,	<i>mine</i> ;	nostras,	<i>of our country</i> ;
ipse,	<i>himself</i> ;	tuus,	<i>thine</i> ;	vestras,	<i>of your country</i> .

To these may be added their compounds, *Egomet*, I myself; *tute*, thou thyself; *idem*, the same: and also the relative *qui*, who, or what; and *cujas*, of what country, or sect.

Pronouns demonstrative are five; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*.

Pronouns relative are *qui*, and its compounds.

Pronouns possessive are five; *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, and *vester*.

Three pronouns, *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*, are called gentiles, and relate to countries, sects, and factions.

All pronouns which one cannot properly call upon, or speak to, want the vocative case.

Declension of PRONOUNS.

Ego, *tu*, *sui*, are pronouns substantive, and are thus declined.

Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Ego,	<i>I</i> ,	N.	Nos,	<i>we</i> ,
G.	Mei,	<i>of me</i> ,	G.	Nostr-um, v. i,	<i>of us</i> ,
D.	Mihi,	<i>to me</i> ,	D.	Nobis,	<i>to us</i> ,
A.	Me,	<i>me</i> ,	A.	Nos,	<i>us</i> ,
V.	caret,		V.	caret,	
A. a	Me,	<i>by me</i> ,	A. a	Nobis,	<i>by us</i> .

Singular.

Singular.			Plural.		
N.	Tu,	thou, or, you,	N.	Vos,	ye,
G.	Tui.	of thee,	G.	Vestr-um, v. i,	of you,
D.	Tibi,	to thee,	D.	Vobis,	to you,
A.	Te,	thee,	A.	Vos,	you,
V. o	Tu,	o thou,	V. o	Vos,	o ye,
A. a	Te,	by thee,	A. a	Vobis,	by you,

Sui, of himself, herself, themselves, has no nominative, or vocative case, and is thus declined.

Singular and Plural.		
Gen.	Sui,	of himself; or, themselves,
Dat.	Sibi,	to himself; or, themselves,
Acc.	Se,	himself; or, themselves,
Abl. a	Se,	by himself; or, themselves,

Ille, and *iste*, he, she, or that, are thus declined :

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	Ille,	illa,	illud,	N.	Illi,	illæ,	illa,
G.	Illius,			G.	Illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
D.	Illi,			D.	Illis,		
A.	Illum,	illam,	illud,	A.	Illos,	illas,	illa,
V.	caret,			V.	caret,		
A.	Illo,	illâ,	illo.	A.	Illis.		

In like manner is also declined *ipse*, he himself; saving, that the nominative, & accusative, ~~and vocative~~ cases singular, make *ipsum* in the neuter gender.

Is, he, or that; and *qui*, who, are thus declined :

Singular.				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	Is,	ea,	id,	N.	Ii,	ea,	ea,
G.	Ejus,			G.	Eorum,	earum,	eorum,
D.	Ei,			D.	Iis, vel	eis,	
A.	Eum,	eam,	id,	A.	Eos,	eam,	ea,
V.	caret.			V.	caret,		
A.	Eo,	ea,	eo.	A.	Iis, vel	eis.	

In like manner also is declined its compound *idem*, the same; as, nom. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*; gen. *eiusdem*, &c.

Singular,

Singular,				Plural.			
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
N.	Qui,	quæ,	quod,	N.	Qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	Cujus,			G.	Quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	Cui,			D.	Quibus, <i>vel</i> ,	queis.	
A.	Quem,	quam,	quod,	A.	Quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	<i>caret</i> ,			V.	<i>caret</i> ,		
A.	Quo,	quâ,	quo, <i>v.</i> qui.	A.	Quibus, <i>vel</i> ,	queis.	

Thus also are declined its compounds, *quidam*, a certain one ; *quisvis*, *quilibet*, any one ; *quicumque*, whosoever.

Quis, *quæ*, *quid*, who or what, is declined like *qui* ; as also are its compounds, † except that for the most part they make the feminine gender in the nominative case, singular, and the neuter in the nominative and accusative plural in *qua*.

Quisquis, whosoever, is thus declined :

Nom.	Quisquis, quidquid.
Acc.	Quidquid.
Abl.	Quoquo, quâquâ, quoquo.

Meus, *tuus*, *suus*, are declined like *bonus*, except that *meus* makes *mi* in the vocative case sing. masculine. *Voster* & *vestra*, as *Vester*.

Nostras and *vestras* are declined like *felix*, as also *cujas*, and other gentiles, or national nouns ; as, *Arpinas*, *Fidénas*, *Privernas*, &c. of or belonging to *Arpinum*, *Fidénæ*, *Privernum*.

A pronoun hath three persons ; the first speaketh of itself, as *ego*, I, *nos*, we : the second is spoken to, as *tu*, thou ; *vos*, ye.

The third person is spoken of ; as, *ille*, he, *illi*, they : And therefore all other nouns and pronouns are of the third person, except they are joined with *ego*, *nos*, *tu*, or *vos*.

† *Aliquis*, *quisvis*, *nequis*, *nunquis*, *ecquis*.

Note. Pronouns are compounded of one another ; as, *egomet* : with nouns ; as, *cujusmodi* : with prepositions ; as, *meum* : with conjunctions ; as, *hæcne* : with a syllable ; as, *egomet*.

Note 2. *Ego*, *tu*, *tu*, are pronouns substantive, of the same gender with the person or thing which they represent ; all the rest are pronouns adjective, but they have no degrees of comparison, because their sense cannot be increased nor diminished.

OF a V E R B.

A V E R B signifies *to be, to do, or to suffer*, and is the chief word in every sentence.

The accidents of a verb are six ; voice, mood, tense, number, person, and conjugation.

Voices, or forms, are two ; *active*, ending in *o*, as *amo*, I love ; *passive*, ending in *or*, as *amor*, I am loved.

1. Of verbs ending in *o*, some are actives transitive ; as, *vinco*, I conquer : and by changing *o* into *or*, become passives : Some are neuter, and intransitive ; as, *gaudeo*, I am glad ; and these are never made passives unless when they are used impersonally.

2. Of verbs ending in *or*, some are passives, as, *vincor*, I am conquered ; some are deponents with an active signification, as, *loquor*, I speak ; and some few are neuters, as, *glorior*, I boast.

Of verbs such as have different persons, are called personals, as *ego amo*, I love ; *tu amas*, thou lovest.

And such as have not different persons, are called impersonals, as, *decet*, it becometh ; *oportet*, it behoveth.*

OF M O O D S.

MOODS are four ; the indicative, the imperative, the potential, and the infinitive.

The indicative mood *declares something* ; as, *ego amo*, I love ; or *asketh a question* ; as, *amas tu ?* dost thou love ?

Note 1. A verb is called transitive, when the action passes from the agent to some other thing ; as, *amo patrem, veneror deum*. Intransitive, when the action does not pass to any object ; as, *curro*, I run, *ambulo*, I walk.

Note 2. Of verbs neuter, some signify the state or posture of a person or thing, as *caleo*, I am warm ; *sideo*, I sit. Some signify barely existence or being, and are called verbs substantive ; as, *sum*, I am ; *existo*, I exist.

Note 3. Some verbs in *o* have their endings partly active, and partly passive, called neuter-passives ; as, *gaudeo, gavisus sum, ausco, ausus sum*.

Note 4. Four neuter-passives are wholly active as to their endings, and wholly passive as to their signification ; *verberor*, I am beaten ; *venor*, I am sold ; *liceo*, I am rated or valued ; *exor*, I am banished.

Note 5. Verbs deponent, and verbs neuter, ending in *or*, are conjugated and declined like passives, but with gerunds and supines like actives.

Note 6. Some deponents have both an active and a passive sense, and are called verbs common.

* These verbs are called impersonals, which are not read in the first or second person, the pronoun *id*, it, or a substantive of their own signification, is the nominative case to these defective verbs ; as, *id decet. id oportet.* They are declined in the 3^d Person singular throughout all moods & tenses. The

The imperative *commandeth* or *entreateth*; as, *ama tu*, love thou; *parce mihi*, spare me.

The potential mood signifies *power* or *duty*, and is commonly known by these signs, *may*, *can*, *might*, *would could*, *should*, or *ought*; as, *amem*, I may or can love; but when it is subjoined to another verb in the sentence, it is called the subjunctive mood, and hath always some conjunction or indefinite word joined to it, and is construed with the signs of the indicative; as, *eram miser cum amarem*, I was a wretch when I loved; *nescio qualis sit*, I know not what sort of a man he is.

The infinitive mood hath no distinction of number or person, and is known commonly by the sign *to*; as, *amare*, to love.

OF GERUNDS and SUPINES.

GERUNDS are verbal substantives of the second declension, used in all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative, and have most commonly an active signification, as, Nom. *amandum*, to love; Gen. *amandi*, of loving; Dat. and Abl. *amando*, *loving*, in or by loving.

SUPINES.

SUPINES are two, and are verbal substantives of the fourth declension, used in the accusative and ablative singular only; the first signifies actively, as, *amatum*, to love; the latter passively, as, *amatu*, to be loved.

OF TENSES.

TENSE is an accident which expresses the time of the action or being of a thing.

Time hath properly but three distinctions, present, past, and to-come.

In each part of time an action may be either imperfect, or not finished; or perfect, and finished.

An action imperfect has three tenses allotted to it:

1. The present [imperfect] as *coeno*, I do sup, or am at supper now, but have not done it.

2. The preterimperfect, as *coenabam*, I was at supper then, but had not yet done it.

3. The future-imperfect, as *coenabo*, I shall sup or be at supper, but not that I shall have then done it.

An

An action perfect has also three tenses :

1. The [present] perfect, as, *cocnávi*, I have supped, and it is now done.
2. The [preter- or] pluperfect, as, *coenaveram*, I had then supped, and it was then done.
3. The future-perfect, as, *coenavero*, I shall have supped, or shall have done it.

OF NUMBERS and PERSONS.

A VERB hath certain endings, answering to the numbers and persons of its nominative case ; as,

Sing. *Ego am-o*, I love ; *tu am-as*, thou lovest ; *ille am-at*, he loveth.

Plur. *Nos am-amus*, we love ; *vos am-atis*, ye love ; *illí am-ant*, they love.

Of the VERB *Sum*.

BEFORE we decline verbs, we must learn to decline the verb *sum*, in this manner.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futúrus, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.—*am*.

Sing.	<i>Sum,</i>	<i>I am.</i>
	<i>Es,</i>	<i>thou art.</i>
	<i>Est,</i>	<i>he is.</i>
Plur.	<i>Sumus,</i>	<i>we are.</i>
	<i>Estis,</i>	<i>ye are.</i>
	<i>Sunt.</i>	<i>they are.</i>

Preterimperfect Tense.—*was*.

Sing.	<i>Eram,</i>	<i>I was.</i>
	<i>Eras,</i>	<i>thou wast.</i>
	<i>Erat,</i>	<i>he was.</i>
Plur.	<i>Eramus,</i>	<i>we were.</i>
	<i>Eratis,</i>	<i>ye were,</i>
	<i>Erant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>

Future-

Future-imperfect Tense.—*shall, or, will.*

Sing.	Ero,	<i>I shall, or, will be.</i>
	Eris,	<i>thou shalt, or, wilt be.</i>
	Erit,	<i>he shall, or, will be.</i>
Plur.	Erimus,	<i>we shall, or, will be.</i>
	Eritis,	<i>ye shall, or, will be.</i>
	Erunt,	<i>they shall, or, will be.</i>

Perfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing.	Fui,	<i>I have been.</i>
	Fuisti,	<i>thou hast been.</i>
	Fuit,	<i>he hath been.</i>
Plur.	Fuimus,	<i>we have been.</i>
	Fuistis,	<i>ye have been.</i>
	Fuerunt, <i>vel, fuere,</i>	<i>they have been.</i>

Pluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing.	Fueram,	<i>I had been.</i>
	Fueras,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
	Fuerat,	<i>he had been.</i>
Plur.	Fueramus,	<i>we had been.</i>
	Fueratis,	<i>ye had been.</i>
	Fuerant,	<i>they had been.</i>

Future-perfect Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing.	Fuero,	<i>I shall have been.</i>
	Fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been.</i>
	Fuerit,	<i>he shall have been.</i>
Plur.	Fuerimus,	<i>we shall have been.</i>
	Fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been.</i>
	Fuerint,	<i>they shall have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Sis, es, esto,	<i>Be thou.</i>
	Sit, esto,	<i>let him be.</i>
Plur.	Simus,	<i>let us be.</i>
	Sitis, este, estote,	<i>be ye.</i>
	Sint, sunt,	<i>let them be.</i>

POTEN-

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.—*may, or, can.*

Sing.	Sim,	<i>I may, or, can be.</i>
	Sis,	<i>thou may'st, or, can'st be.</i>
	Sit,	<i>he may, or, can be.</i>
Plur.	Simus,	<i>we may, or can be.</i>
	Sitis,	<i>ye may, or, can be.</i>
	Sint,	<i>they may, or, can be.</i>

Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, &c.*

Sing.	Essem,	<i>I might, or, could be.</i>
	Esles,	<i>thou might'st, or, could'st be.</i>
	Esset,	<i>he might, or, could be.</i>
Plur.	Essemus,	<i>we might, or, could be.</i>
	Essetis,	<i>ye might, or, could be.</i>
	Essent,	<i>they might, or, could be.</i>

Perfect Tense.—*may, should, &c.*

Sing.	Fuerim,	<i>I may, or, should have been.</i>
	Fueris,	<i>thou may'st, or, should'st have been.</i>
	Fuerit,	<i>he may, or, should have been.</i>
Plur.	Fuerimus,	<i>we may, or, should have been.</i>
	Fueritis,	<i>ye may, or, should have been.</i>
	Fuerint,	<i>they may, or, should have been.</i>

Pluperfect Tense.—*might, would, &c.*

Sing.	Fuissem,	<i>I might, or, would have been.</i>
	Fuisses,	<i>thou might'st, or, would'st have been.</i>
	Fuisset,	<i>he might, or, would have been.</i>
Plur.	Fuissemus,	<i>we might, or, would have been.</i>
	Fuissetis,	<i>ye might, or, would have been.</i>
	Fuissent,	<i>they might, or, would have been.</i>

Future perfect Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing.	Fuero,	<i>I shall have been.</i>
	Fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been.</i>
	Fuerit,	<i>he shall have been.</i>
Plur.	Fuerimus,	<i>we shall have been.</i>
	Fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been.</i>
	Fuerint,	<i>they shall have been.</i>

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Esse, *to be.*

Perfect and Pluperfect Tense.

Fuisse, *to have been.*

Future imperfect Tense.

Fore, *vel*, Futúrum esse, *to be about to be.*

Future perfect Tense.

Futúrum fuisse, *to have been about to be.*Participle of the future in *rus*.Futúrus, *about to be.*

CONJUGATIONS.

CONJUGATION is a set of endings, by which a verb is varied through all its moods and tenses.

Conjugations are four, which may be distinguished by the following rules and marks.

RULE I. All verbs ending in *o*, with a consonant immediately before *o*, are of the first or third conjugation: Verbs of the first conjugation make their perfect tense in *avi*, and the supine in *atum*; as, Am-o, as, ávi, áre, andum, átum, ans, atúrus; *to love*.

II. All verbs in *eo* are of the second conjugation, and make the perfect tense in *ui* and the supine in *itum*; as, Mon-eo, es, ui, ére, endum, itum, ens, itúrus; *to advise*.

III. All verbs of the third conjugation are set down in a list, and are to be learned as a vocabulary. *Vid. Comp. Art. x.*

Le-go, gis, gi, gere, gendum, étum, ens, étúrus; *to read*.

IV. All verbs in *io* are of the fourth conjugation, and make the perfect tense in *ivi*, and the supine in *itum*; as,

Aud io, is, ívi, ire, iendum, ítum, iens, itúrus; *to hear*.

Marks of the conjugations are; *á* long, in the first; *e* long, in the second; *e* short, in the third; *í* long, in the fourth, before *re* and *ris*; as, am-áre, aris; mon-ére, eris; leg-ere, eris; aud-íre, iris.

The present, perfect, and supine, are the principal parts, from which all the rest are formed: If any of these be wanting, the tenses derived from that part are also wanting.

Verbs

Verbs in O FORMED through the Moods and Tenses.

Present Form.

Indicative.			Imperat.	Potential.		Infinitive.		Part.
Pres.	Impf.	Fut.	Pres.	Pres.	Imp.	Pres.	Ger.	Pres.
1 Am-o,	ábam,	ábo;	a,	áto;	em,	árem;	áre,	andum, ans.
2 Mon-eo,	ébam,	ébo;	e,	éto;	cam,	érem;	ére,	endum, ens.
3 Leg-o,	ébam,	am;	e,	ito;	am,	erem;	ere,	endum, ens.
4 Aud-io,	iebam,	iam;	i,	íto;	iam,	írem;	íre,	iendum, iens.

Perfect Form.

1 Amáv-	}	i,	eram,	ero;	erim	issem;	isse.
2 Monu-							
3 Leg-							
4 Audiv-							
1 Amát-	}	um,	u,	úrus,	úrum esse,	úrum fuisse.	
2 Monit-							
3 Lect-							
4 Audít-							

Verbs in OR FORMED through the Moods and Tenses.

Present Form.

Indicative.			Imperative.	Potential.		Infinitive.		Part.
Present.	Imperf.	Future.	Prescat.	Pres.	Impf.	Pres.	Future.	
1 Am-or,	ábar,	ábor;	áre,	átor;	er,	árer;	ári,	andus.
2 Mon-cor,	ebar,	ébor;	ére,	étor;	ear,	érer;	éri,	endus.
3 Leg-or,	ébar,	ar;	ere,	itor;	ar,	erér;	i,	endus.
4 Aud-ior,	iebar,	iar;	íre,	ítor;	iar,	íer;	íri,	iendus.

Perfect Form.

1 Amat-us,	}	tum,	eram,	ero,	sim,	esset,	}	esse,	
2 Monit-us,		vel,	vel,	vel,	vel,	vel.		um,	vel,
3 Lect-us,		fui,	fueram,	fuero;	fuerim,	fuissem;		fuisse.	
4 Audit-us,									
1 Amat-	}	um	iri,	um	fore,	us.			
2 Monit-									
3 Lect-									
4 Audit-									

Verbs in O DECLINED through the Persons.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.			Persons.	Plural.		
1	2	3	1	2	3	
<i>I love,</i>	<i>thou lovest,</i>	<i>he loveth,</i>	<i>we love,</i>	<i>ye love,</i>	<i>they love.</i>	
or,	or,	or,	or,	or,	or,	
<i>do love.</i>	<i>dost love.</i>	<i>doth love.</i>	<i>do love.</i>	<i>do love.</i>	<i>do love.</i>	
1 Am-o,	as,	at ;	ámus,	átis,	ant.	
2 Mon-co,	es,	et ;	émus,	étis,	ent.	
3 Leg-o,	is,	it ;	imus,	itis,	unt.	
4 Aud-io,	is,	it ;	ímus,	ítis,	iunt.	

Preterimperfect Tense.

<i>did.</i>	<i>didst.</i>	<i>did.</i>	<i>did.</i>	<i>did.</i>	<i>did.</i>	
1 Am-ábam,	ábas,	ábat ;	abámus,	abátis,	ábant.	
2 Mon-ébam,	ébas,	ébat ;	ebámus,	ebátis,	ébant.	
3 Leg-ébam,	ébas,	ébat ;	ebámus,	ebátis,	ébant.	
4 Aud-icbam,	iebas,	iebat ;	iebámus,	iebátis,	iebant.	

Future imperfect Tense.

<i>shall, or,</i>	<i>shalt, or,</i>	<i>shall, or,</i>	<i>shall, or,</i>	<i>shall, or,</i>	<i>shall, or.</i>	
<i>will.</i>	<i>wilt.</i>	<i>will.</i>	<i>will.</i>	<i>will.</i>	<i>will.</i>	
1 Am ábo,	ábis,	ábit ;	abimus,	abitis,	ábunt.	
2 Mon-ébo,	ébis,	ébit ;	ebimus,	ebitis,	ébunt,	
3 Leg-am,	es,	et ;	émus,	étis,	ent.	
4 Aud-iam,	ies,	iet ;	iemus,	ietis,	ient,	

Perfect Tense.

<i>have loved.</i>	<i>hast.</i>	<i>hath.</i>	<i>have.</i>			
1 Amav-i,	}	isti,	it;	imus,	istis,	erunt, vel, ére.
2 Monu-i,						
3 Leg-i,						
4 Audiv-i,						

Pluperfect Tense.

<i>had loved.</i>	<i>hadst.</i>	<i>had.</i>	<i>had.</i>			
1 Amav-eram,	}	eras,	erat;	erámus,	erátis,	erant.
2 Monu-eram,						
3 Leg-eram,						
4 Audiv-eram,						

Future

Future perfect Tense.

	<i>shall have.</i>	<i>shalt,</i>	<i>shall,</i>	<i>shail.</i>	
1 Amav-ero,	}	cris,	erit,	crimus,	eritis,
2 Monu-ero,					
3 Leg-ero,					
4 Audiv-ero,					
					erint.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present, or, Future Tense.

	<i>do thou.</i>	<i>let him.</i>	<i>let us.</i>	<i>do ye.</i>	<i>let them.</i>
1 Am-	a, áto ;	et, áto ;	émus ;	áte, atóte ;	ent, anto.
2 Mon-	e, éto ;	eat, éto ;	cámus ;	éte, etóte ;	eant, ento.
3 Leg-	e, ito ;	at, ito ;	ámus ;	ite, itóte ;	ant, unto.
4 Aud-	i, íto ;	iat, íto ;	iámus ;	íte, itóte ;	iant, iunto.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.

	<i>may, or, can.</i>	<i>may'st, or, can'st.</i>	<i>may, or, can.</i>		<i>may, or, can.</i>
1 Am-em,	es,	et ;	émus,	étis,	ent.
2 Mon-eam,	eas,	eat ;	eámus,	eátis,	eant.
3 Leg-am,	as,	at ;	ámus,	átis,	ant.
4 Aud-iam,	ias,	iat ;	iámus,	iátis,	iant.

Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, &c.*

1 Am-árem,	áres,	áret ;	arémus,	arétis,	àrent.
2 Mon-érem,	éres,	éret ;	crémus,	erétis,	érent.
3 Leg-erem,	eres,	eret ;	erémus,	erétis,	erent.
4 Aud-írem,	íres,	íret ;	irémus,	irétis,	írent.

Perfect Tense.—*may, or, should have.*

1 Amav-erim,	}	cris,	crit ;	erimus,	eritis,	erint.
2 Monu-erim,						
3 Leg-erim,						
4 Audiv-erim,						

Pluperfect Tense.—*might, or, would have.*

1 Amav-issém,	}	issés,	isset ;	issémus,	issétis,	issent.
2 Monu-issém,						
3 Leg-issém,						
4 Audiv-issém,						

Future-

Future ~~im~~perfect Tense.

<i>shall have.</i>	<i>shalt.</i>	<i>shall.</i>	<i>shall.</i>	
1 Amav-ero,	} eris,	} erit ;	} erimus,	} eritis, erint.
2 Monu-ero,				
3 Leg-ero,				
4 Audiv-ero,				

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Imperf. *to.* Gerund. *to.* Participle. Present.

1 Am-āre,	andum,	ans ;	<i>loving.</i>
2 Mon-ēre,	endum,	ens ;	<i>advising.</i>
3 Leg-ere,	endum,	ens ;	<i>reading.</i>
4 Aud-īre,	iendum,	iens ;	<i>bearing.</i>

Perfect and Plu, erfect Tense.

1 Amav-isse,	} <i>to have</i>	<i>loved.</i>
2 Monu-isse,		<i>advised.</i>
3 Leg-isse,		<i>read.</i>
4 Audiv-isse,		<i>heard.</i>

Supine. Participle Fut. Future imperfect. Future perfect.

<i>to.</i>	<i>to be.</i>	<i>about to.</i>	<i>to be about to.</i>	<i>to have been about to.</i>
1 Amāt-um, u,	Amat-ūrus,	Amat-ūrum	Amat-ūrum	Amat-ūrum
2 Monit-um, u,	Monit-ūrus,	Monit-ūrum	Monit-ūrum	Monit-ūrum
3 Lect-um, u,	Lect-ūrus,	Lect-ūrum	Lect-ūrum	Lect-ūrum
4 Audit-um, u,	Audit-ūrus,	Audit-ūrum	Audit-ūrum	Audit-ūrum

☞ The tenses of the indicative active may be Englished with *passive signs*, and the participle in *ing*, as, *i rel.* *I love*, or, *I am loving*, &c.—*imperf.* *I was loving*, *thou wast loving*, &c.—*Fut.* *I shall be loving*, &c.

In the tenses from the perfect root *o*, *ex*, *ci*, are sometimes left out by Syncope, as, *amisi* for *amavisti*; *audisti* for *audivisti*: so *petii*, *petisti*, *p.isti*, *perii*, &c.—sometimes in the poets, *is*, as, *exstincti* for *extinxisti*; *exclusti* for *exclulisti*; and in the infinitive, *iss*, as, *surrexe* for *surrexisti*; so *prodax*, *abstraxe*, &c.

Verbs in OR DECLINED through the Persons.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>I am.</i>	<i>thou art.</i>	<i>he is.</i>	<i>we are.</i>	<i>ye are.</i>	<i>they are.</i>
1	Am-or,	àris,†	àtur ;	àmur,	amini,	antur.
2	Mon-eor,	éris,	étur ;	émur,	emini,	entur.
3	Leg-or,	eris,	itur ;	imur,	imini,	untur.
4	Aud-ior,	iris,	itur ;	imur,	imini,	iuntur.

Preterimperfect.

	<i>was.</i>	<i>wast.</i>	<i>was.</i>	<i>were.</i>	<i>were.</i>	<i>were.</i>
1	Am-àbar,	abàris,†	abàtur ;	abàmur,	abamini,	abantur.
2	Mon-ébar,	ebàris,	ebàtur ;	ebàmur,	ebamini,	ebantur.
3	Leg-ébar,	ebàris,	ebàtur ;	ebàmur,	ebamini,	ebantur.
4	Aud iébar,	iebàris,	iebàtur ;	iebàmur,	iebamini,	iebantur.

Future imperfect.—*shall, or, will be.*

1	Am-abor,	aberis,†	abitur ;	abimur,	abimini,	abuntur.
2	Mon-ébor,	eberis,	ebitur ;	ebimur,	ebimini,	ebuntur.
3	Leg-ar,	eris,	étur ;	émur,	emini,	entur.
4	Aud-iar,	ieris,	etur ;	émur,	emini,	entur.

Perfect.—*have been.*

1	Amat-us,	} sum,	us es,	us est ;	i sumus,	i estis,	i sunt.
2	Monit-us,		vel	vel	vel	vel	fuérunt,
3	Leet-us,						
4	Audit-us,		fui,	fuiſti, fuit ;	fuiſmus,	fuiſtis,	v. fuére.

Pluperfect.—*had been.*

1	Amat-us,	} eram,	eras,	erat ;	i eràmus,	eratis,	erant,
2	Monit-us,		vel	vel	vel	vel	vel
3	I eet-us,						
4	Audit-us,		fueram,	fuerat, fuerat ;	fueràmus,	fueràtis,	fuerant.

Future perfect.—*shall have been.*

1	Amat-us,	} ero,	eris,	erit ;	i erimus,	eritis,	erunt,
2	Monit-us,						
3	Leet-us,						
4	Audit-us,						

† The second person singular in all tenses of the present root may have *re* for *ris* ; as, *amàres vel amàre.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present, or, Future Tense.

	<i>be thou.</i>	<i>let him be.</i>	<i>let us be.</i>	<i>be ye.</i>	<i>let them be.</i>
1	Am àre, àtor ;	étur, àtor ;	émur ;	a-mini ;	entur, antor.
2	Mon-ére, étor ;	èatur, étor ;	eàmur ;	emini ;	eantur, entor.
3	Leg-ere, itor ;	àtur, itor ;	àmur ;	imini ;	antur, untor.
4	Aud íre, ítor ;	iàtur, ítor ;	iamur ;	imini ;	iantur, untor.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present Tense.—*may, or, can be.*

1	Am-er,	éris,	étur ;	émur,	emini,	entur.
2	Mon ear,	èris,	èatur ;	eàmur,	eamini,	eantur.
3	Leg ar,	eris,	àtur ;	àmur,	amini,	antur.
4	Aud-iar,	iais,	iàtur ;	iamur,	iamini,	iantur.

Præterimperfect.—*might, or, could be.*

1	Am àrer,	aréris,	arétur ;	arémur,	aremini,	arentur.
2	Mon-érer,	eréris,	erétur ;	erémur,	cremini,	erentur.
3	Leg-erér,	eréris,	erétur ;	erémur,	eremini,	erentur.
4	Aud-írer,	iréris,	irétur ;	iremur,	iremini,	irentur.

Perfect.—*may, or, should have been.*

1	Amât-us,	}	sim,	sis,	fit ;	i simus,	fitis,	sint,
2	Monit-us,		vel	vel	vel	vel	vel	vel
3	Leêt us,		fuerim,	fueris,	fuerit ;	fuerimus,	fueritis,	fuerint.
4	Audit-us							

Pluperfect.—*might, or, would have been.*

1	Amât-us,	}	essim,	esses,	esset ;	i essimus,	essitis,	essent.
2	Monit-us,		vel	vel	vel	vel	vel	vel
3	Leêt us,		fuissem,	fuisles,	fuisset ;	fuissemus,	fuisletis,	fuisissent.
4	Audit-us,							

Future perfect.—*shall have been.*

1	Amât-us,	}	fucro,	fucris,	fucrit ;	i fucimus,	fucritis,	fucrint.
2	Monit-us,							
3	Leêt us,							
4	Audit-us,							

I N F I-

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. & Imperf. Particip. fut. in *das*.
to be. to be.

Perfect and Pluperfect.

1 Am-ári, andus, <i>loved</i> .	Amátum*	esse, fuisse	} to have been	{	loved.
2 Mon-éri, endus, <i>advised</i> .	Monitum				
3 Leg-i, endus, <i>read</i> .	Lectum				
4 Aud-íri, iendus, <i>heard</i> .	Auditum				

Future imperfect.
to be about to be.

Future perfect.
to be about to have been.

Participle perfect.

1 Amátum	} iri. †	Amátum	} fore.	Amátus, <i>loved</i> . §
2 Monitum		Monitum		Monitus, <i>advised</i> .
3 Lectum		Lectum,		Lectus, <i>read</i> .
4 Auditum		Auditum,		Auditus, <i>heard</i> .

☞ Verbs in *Or* may be Conjugated after this Manner.

Passives.

- 1 Am-or, áris *vel* áre, átus sum *vel* fui, ári; átus, andus.
- 2 Mon-eor, éris *vel* ére, itus sum *vel* fui éri; itus, endus.
- 3 Le-gor, geris *vel* gere, ctus sum *vel* fui, gi; ctus, gendus.
- 4 Aud-ior, íris *vel* íre, ítus sum *vel* fui, íri; ítus, iendus.

Deponents of active sense, thus;

Loqu-or, eris *vel* ere, útus sum *vel* fui, i; endum, útum, ens, útus, utúrus, endus; *to speak*.

Deponents of neuter sense, thus;

Laet-or, áris *vel* áre, átus sum *vel* fui, ári; andum, átum, ans, átus, atúrus; *to be glad*.

* *Amátum esse* denotes a thing finished, without regard to the time when. *Amátum fuisse* denotes a thing finished, and some time since intervened. The like distinction may be made between *amátus sum* and *amátus fui*, *amátus sim* and *amátus fuerim*.—*Amátus eram*, Sometimes I was loved. It denotes a thing was finished at a certain time past referred to, with which it was cotemporary, *Amátus fueram* denotes a thing finished before a certain time past referred to, to which it was prior.

† *Amátum, monitum, &c.* in this tense are not participles, but the supine in *um*, and therefore invariable both as to gender and number.

§ In deponent verbs the sign is only *having*; as, *loctus, having spoke*.

Verbs Irregular, or out of Rule.

Certain verbs vary from the general rule, and are Conjugated and Declined in the manner following.

CONJUGATED.

Possūm, potes, potui, posse;	<i>to be able.</i>
Volo, vis, volui, velle, volendum; <i>supinis</i> <i>caret, volens;</i>	<i>to be willing.</i>
Nolo, nonvis, nolui, nolle, nolendum; <i>sup.</i> <i>caret, nolens;</i>	<i>to be unwilling.</i>
Malo, mavis, malui, malle, malendum; <i>sup. caret, malens;</i>	<i>to be more willing.</i>
Fero, fers, tuli, ferre, ferendum; latum, ferens latūrus;	<i>to bear, or, suffer.</i>
Feror, ferris <i>vel</i> ferre, latus sum <i>vel</i> fui, ferri, latus, ferendus;	<i>to be born, or, suffered.</i>
Fio,† fis, factus sum <i>vel</i> fui, fieri, factus, faciendus;	<i>to be made, or, done.</i>
Eo, is, ivi, ire, eundum, itum, iens, itūrus;*	<i>to go.</i>

DECLINED through the Persons.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Possūm,	potes,	potest;	possūmus,	potēstis,	possunt.
Volo,	vis,	vult;	volumus,	vultis,	volunt.
Nolo,	nonvis,	nonvult;	nolumus,	nonvultis,	nolunt.
Malo,	mavis,	mavult;	malumus,	mavultis,	malunt.
Fero,	fers,	fert;	ferimus,	fertis,	ferunt.
Feror,	ferris,	fertur;	ferimur,	ferimini,	feruntur.
Fio,†	fis,	fit;	simus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Eo,	is,	it;	imus,	itis,	eunt.

† *Fio* is the passive of *facio*, *to make*, or, *do* *factor* not being used.

* So the compounds of *eo*; and *queo*, *to be able*, with its compound *nequeo*; but *mitto* is regular: *queo* wants the imperative mood.

Imperfect.	Future.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Fut.
Poteram, ¹	potero, ⁴	potu-i, ⁸	eram, ¹⁰	—
Volébam, ²	volam, ⁵	volu-i, ⁸	eram,	—
Nolébam, ²	nolam, ⁵	nolu-i, ⁸	eram,	—
Malébam, ²	malam, ⁵	malu-i, ⁸	eram,	—
Ferébam, ²	feram, ⁵	tul-i, ⁸	eram,	—
Ferébar, ³	ferar, ⁶	latus ⁹	eram,	} cro.
Fiébam, ²	fiam, ⁵	factus ⁹	eram,	
Ibam, ²	ibo, ⁷	iv-i, ⁸	eram,	—

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Possim, volo, and malo, want the Imperative.

Nol-i, ito;	íro,	íte, itóte;	<i>ite itote</i>	unto.
Fer, ferto;	ferat, ferto;	ferámus;	fer-te, tóte;	fer-ant, unto.
Fer-re, tor;	átur, tor;	ámur;	imini;	antur, untor.
Fi, fito;	fiat, fito;	fiámus;	fite, tóte;	fi-ant, unto.
I, ito;	eat, ito;	eámus;	ite, itóte;	eant, eunto.

POTENTIAL MOOD.

Present.	Imperfect.	Perfect.	Pluperfect.	Future.
Possim, ¹	possem, ⁴	potuerim, ⁶	potuissim. ⁸	potuero. ¹⁰
Velim, ¹	vellem, ⁴	voluerim, ⁶	voluissim. ⁸	voluero. ¹⁰
Nolim, ¹	nollem, ⁴	noluerim, ⁶	noluissem. ⁸	noluero. ¹⁰
Malim, ¹	mallem, ⁴	maluerim, ⁶	maluissim. ⁸	maluero. ¹⁰
Feram, ²	ferrem, ⁴	tulerim, ⁶	tulissim. ⁸	tulero. ¹⁰
Ferar, ³	ferrer, ⁵	latus ⁷	latus ⁹	} fuero
Fiam, ²	fierem, ⁴	factus ⁷	factus ⁹	
Eam, ²	irem, ⁴	iverim, ⁶	ivissim. ⁸	ivero. ¹⁰

1 Pot-eram, eras, &c. as Eram.
2 Vol-ebam, ébas, &c. as Legebam.
3 Fer-ébar, ebáris, &c. as Legebar.
4 Pot-ero, eris, &c. as Ero.
5 Vol-am, es, &c. as Legam.
6 Fer-ar, eris, &c. as Legar.
7 Ibo, ibis, ibit, &c. so its compounds.
8 Potu-i, isti, &c. as Legi.
9 Lat-us sum, us, es, &c. as Lectus sum.
10 Potu-eram, ero, &c. as Eram and ero.

1 Pos-sim, sis, sit, &c. as Sim.
2 Fer-am, as, &c. as Leg-am, as, &c.
3 Fer-ar, áris, &c. as Leg-ar, áris, &c.
4 Pos-sem, ses, &c. as Essim.
5 Fer-rer, reris, &c. as Legerer.
6 Potnerim, as Legcrim.
7 Latus sim, &c. as Lectus sim.
8 Potuissim, &c. as Legissim.
9 Latus essim, as Lectus essim.
10 Potnero, &c. as Fuero.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.	Perfect.	Future.
Posse, ferre ;	potuisse, tulisse ;	laturum esse.
Velle, ferri ;	voluisse, latum } esse, v.	latum iri.
Nolle, fieri ;	noluisse, factum } fuisse.	factum iri.
Malle, ire ;	maluisse, ivisse ;	iturum esse.

Edo, to eat, is conjugated and declined thus;

Edo, edis vel es, edi, edere vel esse, edendum, esum, edens, esurus.

Indicative Present.

Edo, edis vel es, edit vel est, edimus, editis vel estis, edunt.

Imperative.

edat, edito, } edamus, { ed-ite, itóte, } ed-ant, unto.||
esto, } est-e, óte, }

The compounds of *Fero*.

	ablátum.	Differo, distuli, dilátum.
	ablátum.	Infero, intuli, illátum.
contuli,	collátum.	Offero, obtuli, oblátum.

VERBS DEFECTIVE.

1 These want the Present Form.

Odi, I hate, or, I have hated; meminí, I remember, or, I have remembered; coepi, I began. Imperative. Memento-tóte; odi and coepi want the imperative: Also novi from noſco, signifies, I know, or, I have known.

2. These want some tenses or persons.

<i>Auſim, I doubt.</i>	Pot. pres. <i>au-sim, sis, ſi; pl auſint.</i>
<i>Quaeſo, I beseech.</i>	Ind. pres. <i>qua-ſo; pl. quaeſ-umus.</i>
<i>Forem, I might be.</i>	Pot. imperf. <i>ſo-rem, res, ret; pl. forent.</i>
<i>Faxim, or, Faxo, would, or, will do it</i>	<i>Faxis, faxit; pl. faxint, for faciam, fecerim, or, fecero.</i>
<i>Cedo, reach, or, give.</i>	Imperat. <i>cedo; pl. cecite. Sodes for ſi audes.</i>

Pot. imperf. cederet, cederetis. In the rest, as *Lego*.

Inquam,

<i>Inquam</i> , I say.	{ Ind. pres. <i>inquam</i> , or, <i>inqu-io</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>it</i> ; pl. <i>inqu-imus</i> , <i>iunt</i> ; imperf. <i>iébat</i> , <i>iébant</i> ; fut. <i>inquies</i> , <i>et</i> , <i>ent</i> ; perf. <i>inquisti</i> ; imperat. <i>inque</i> , <i>ito</i> ; pot. <i>inquiat</i> ; part. <i>inquiens</i> .
<i>Apage</i> , be gone.	Imperat. sing. <i>apage</i> ; pl. <i>apagite</i> .
<i>Salve</i> , God save you.	{ Ind. fut. <i>salvébis</i> ; imperat. <i>salv-e éto</i> ; pl. <i>éte</i> ; Inf <i>salvere</i> .
<i>Sis</i> for <i>si vis</i> .	<i>Capsis</i> for <i>cape si vis</i> , <i>sultis</i> for <i>si vultis</i> .
<i>Aio</i> , I say,	{ Ind. pres. <i>aio</i> , <i>ais</i> , <i>ait</i> ; pl. <i>aiunt</i> ; imperf. <i>aiébam</i> , <i>-bas</i> , &c. pot. <i>aias</i> , <i>at</i> ; pl. <i>aiatis</i> , <i>aiant</i> ; particip. pres. <i>aiens</i> .
<i>Desit</i> , is wanting.	Ind. <i>desit</i> , <i>desiunt</i> ; pot. <i>desiat</i> ; Inf. <i>desieri</i> .
<i>Ave</i> , hail!	Imperat. <i>ave</i> , <i>aveto</i> ; pl. <i>avete</i> ; Inf. <i>avere</i> .
<i>Confit</i> , it consists.	{ Ind. pres. <i>confit</i> ; pot. <i>confiat</i> ; imperf. <i>confieret</i> ; Inf. <i>confieri</i> .
<i>Duit pro dederit</i> .	<i>Explicit</i> is finished. <i>Insit</i> , he begins and says.
<i>Ovat</i> , he triumphs.	{ Ind. pres. <i>ovat</i> ; pot. pres. <i>ovet</i> ; imperf. <i>ovaret</i> ; particip. <i>ovans</i> .

Dor, *der*, of *dare*, to give ; *for*, *fer*, of *fari*, to speak ; *sci*, of *scire*, to know ; are out of use.

Dic, *duc*, *fac*, for *dice*, *duce*, *face*, lose *e* by Apocope.

OF a PARTICIPLE.

A PARTICIPLE is a part of speech derived of a verb, and taketh part of a noun ; as, number, case, gender, and declension : and part of a verb ; as, tense¹ and signification.

There are four kinds of participles : present, perfect, future active, and future passive.

A participle of the present tense is formed of the preter-imperfect tense of the indicative mood, by changing the last syllable into *ns* ; as, *amá-bam*, *ama-ns*.

A participle of the perfect tense is formed of the supine, by changing *um* into *us* ; as, *amát-um*, *amát-us*.

A participle of the future active signifies a likelihood or design of doing a thing, and is formed of the supine, by changing *um* into *urus* ; as, *amat-um*, *amat-urus*.

¹ Tense signifying time past, present, and to come. Signification, having the same signification as the verbs from whence they are derived.

A participle of the future passive is formed of the participle of the present tense, by changing *s* into *dus*; as, *aman-s*, *aman-dus*.

Of verbs in *o*, having the supine, come two participles; one of the present tense, and another of the future in *rus*.¹

Of a verb passive, whose active hath the supine, come two participles; one of the perfect tense, and another of the future in *dus*.²

Of a verb deponent come three participles; one of the present, one of the perfect, and another of the future in *rus*: and if it govern an accusative case, it hath also the future in *dus*.

All participles are declined like nouns adjective: participles that end in *-ns* are declined like *felix*; all the rest are declined like *bonus*.

Of an A D V E R B.*

AN adverb is a part of speech, joined to a verb, or some other word, to enlarge or contract its signification; as, *multum scire*, to know much; *magis pius*, more pious; *satis diu*, long enough; *raro scribere*, to write seldom.

Of a C O N J U N C T I O N.†

A C O N J U N C T I O N is a part of speech that joineth sentences together, and shews their dependence upon one another.

¹ If the supine is wanting, it hath only the participle of the present tense.

² If the supine is wanting, it hath only the participle in *ans*. Some verbs neuter have a participle in *dus*; as, of *acteo*, cometh *actens*.

* Note 1. An adverb has the same relation to a verb, as an adjective has to a substantive: It declares some quality or circumstance of the action, with respect to time, place, or manner thereof, as, *parum legis*, you read little; *pugnavit heri*, he fought yesterday; *hic habitat*, he lives here; *studet assidenter*, he studies diligently.

Note 2. Most english words ending in *ly*, are adverbs; truly, wisely, &c.

Note 3. Adverbs derived of adjectives may be compared; as, *docte*, *doctius*, *doctissime*, *fortiter*, *fortius*, *fortissime*.

† Note 1. Conjunctions in their natural order stand first in a sentence; as, *et*, *aut*, *nec*, *si*, &c.

Note 2. Some contrary to their natural order stand in the second place; as, *autem*, *vero*, *quoque*, *quidem*, *enim*: Some are indifferent to the first or second place; as, *equidem*, *etiam*, *ego*, *igitur*, *tamen*.

Note 3. Three conjunctions, *que*, *ne*, *ut*, are never separated from the words to which they are joined in sense.

OF a PREPOSITION.

A PREPOSITION is a part of speech that shews the various situations of things, and the relation of one thing to another

Prepositions are commonly set before other words in government; as, *ad patrem*: or else joined in composition; as, *indoctus*.

These prepositions following serve to the accusative case.

<i>Ad,</i>	to.	<i>Juxta,</i>	beside or nigh to.
<i>Adversum,</i>	} against.	<i>Ob</i>	for.
<i>Adversus,</i>		<i>P. nēs,</i>	in the power.
<i>Ante,</i>	before.	<i>P. r,</i>	by or through.
<i>Apud,</i>	at.	<i>P. nē,</i>	behind.
<i>Circa,</i>	} about.	<i>Post,</i>	after.
<i>Circum,</i>		<i>Præter,</i>	beside or except.
<i>Circiter,</i>		<i>Prope,</i>	nigh.
<i>Cis,</i>	} on this side.	<i>Propter,</i>	for.
<i>Citra,</i>		<i>Secundum,</i>	according to.
<i>Contra,</i>	against.	<i>Secus,</i>	by or along.
<i>Erga,</i>	toward.	<i>Supra,</i>	above.
<i>Extra,</i>	without.	<i>Trans,</i>	on the further side.
<i>Infra,</i>	beneath.	<i>Versus,</i>	toward.
<i>Inter,</i>	between or among	<i>Ultra,</i>	beyond.
<i>Intra,</i>	within.	<i>Usque,</i>	until. ¹

Obj. 1. *Versus* is set after its case; as, *Londinum versus*, toward London.

Obj. 2. Likewise *penes* and *usque* may be so placed.

These 14 Prepositions following serve to the ablative case.

A-b., coram, absque, palam, prae, pro, sinè, de, tenus, e-x, cum.

<i>A,</i>	} from or by.	<i>Pro,</i>	for.
<i>Ab,</i>		<i>Sinè,</i>	without.
<i>Abs,</i>		<i>De,</i>	of or from.
<i>Coram,</i>	before or in presence.	<i>Tenus,</i>	up to or as far as.
<i>Absque,</i>	without.	<i>E,</i>	} of, from, or out of.
<i>Palam,</i>	openly. (of.	<i>Ex,</i>	
<i>Præ,</i>	before or in comparison	<i>Cum,</i>	with.

5 Prepositions serve to both cases; *Clam, in, sub, subter, and super.*

¹ *Circiter, prope, versus, usque,* are adverbs. The accusative case following them is governed of the preposition *ad* understood.

Of an INTERJECTION.

AN interjection is a part of speech, which signifies some passion or emotion of the mind.

Note. An interjection expresses the meaning of a whole sentence in one word; as, *Oh!* that is, *'Tis a strange thing.*



Of SYNTAX.

SYNTAX teaches the due joining of Words in Sentences,¹ called *Construction*.

The parts of Syntax are two; *Concord* and *Government*.

Concord is the agreement of words in some of their accidents.

Government is the influence one word has upon the accidents of another, that follows it.

There are three concords; the first between the nominative case and the verb; the second between the substantive and the adjective; the third between the antecedent and the relative.

The first CONCORD.

A VERB personal agreeth with its nominative case in number and person; as, *ego voco*, I call; *tu ludis*, you play; *praeceptor legit*, the master reads.

Obs. 1. The nominative case to a verb, substantive to an adjective, or antecedent to a relative, may be found by asking the question who? or what? with the verb, adjective, or relative; as, *Who reads?* Ans. *The master.*

Obs. 2. The nominative cases of the pronouns *I, thou, he, we, ye, they*, are seldom expressed in latin; as, *si dixeris*, if you say; *aestuo*, I am hot; *sudat*, he sweats.—Unless there be some emphasis or distinction to be made; as, *Tu solus amicus*, you are my only friend. *Ego sum ruris amator*, *tu urbis*, I am a lover of the country, you of the city.

¹ A sentence expresses some sentiment or thought of the mind, by two or more words put together, so as to make sense.

Obs. 3. Verbs impersonal have no nominative case before them; as, *Tædet me vitæ*, I am weary of life.

Obs. 4. Verbs of the infinitive mood have an accusative case before them, instead of a nominative, by omitting the conjunctions *quod*, or *ut*; as, *Gaudeo te rediisse*, I am glad that you are return'd, instead of *Gaudeo quod tu rediisti*. *Te fabulam agere volo*, I desire that you would act a comedy, i. e. *ut tu agas*.

The second CONCORD.*

THE adjective, whether it be noun, pronoun, or participle,† agrees with its substantive in case, gender, and number; as, *Rara avis*, an uncommon bird. *Pectora mea hoc vulnus non senserunt*, My breast has not felt this wound. *Nullus ad amissas ibit amicus opes*, No friend will go to a lost estate.

The third CONCORD.

THE relative‡ agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as, *Vir bonus est, qui consulta patrum servat*, He is a good man, who keeps the decrees of the senators.

Obs. Sometimes an adjective or relative agrees with a pronoun primitive, which is included in the possessive; as, *Meum solius peccatum*, My sin alone. *Tuus ipsius animus*, Your own mind. *Sua cujusque laus*, Every one's own praise. *Noster duorum eventus*, The event of us two.

EXCEPTIONS common to all the Concords.

I. A NOUN collective singular, or several nouns or pronouns singular, with a conjunction copulative between them, are usually joined with a verb, adjective, or relative plural, of the most worthy person and gender; as, *Turba ruunt*, The croud rushes, or rush on. *Pars maxima caesi*, The greatest part were slain. *Si tu et pater valetis, ego et mater, qui sumus domi, lacti erimus*, If you and your father are well, I and my mother, who are at home, shall be glad.

Obs. The first person is more worthy than the second, and the second more worthy than the third; also the masculine gender is more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine more worthy

* Every adjective has a substantive express or understood, with which it agrees: Two or more adjectives may agree with one substantive.

† The participle with which the verb *sum* supplies many tenses in the passive voice, is to be put into the same gender as the nominative case to the verb; *amatus*, or *a, am, sum* vel *fur*.

‡ So called, because it relates to a foregoing substantive, called its antecedent.

than the neuter; but in things without life, the neuter is most worthy.

II. Sometimes an infinitive mood, or a sentence, and sometimes an adverb with a genitive case, stands for the nominative case, substantive, or antecedent; and in this case, the verb is the third person, and the adjective and relative the neuter gender; as, *Mentiri non est meum*, Lying is not my way. *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores*, To have learnt the sciences thoroughly, softens much mens manners. *Quod fortunatum isti putant, uxorem nunquam habui*, What those people think a happy thing, I never had a wife.

III. A verb, adjective, or relative, between two substantives of different numbers or genders, may agree with the latter; as, *Omnia pontus erat*, All was sea. *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Every mistake is not to be called folly. *Globus quae terra dicitur*, The globe which is called the earth.

RULES for the Case of the Relative.

I. **W**HEN there cometh no nominative case between the relative and the verb, the relative is the nominative case to the verb; as, *Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur*, The man is wise, who speaketh few words.

Obs. As the relative may be the nominative to a verb, so it may be the substantive to an adjective, that is joined with it, or cometh after it; as, *Divitias amare noli, quod omnium est sordidissimum*, Love not riches, which is the basest of all things.

II. If a nominative case be put between the relative and the verb, the relative is such case as the verb, or other word in the same clause requires after it; as, *Uter libris quos habeo*, I use the books which I have. *Cujus numen adoro*, Whose deity I adore. *Quorum optimum ego habeo*, The best of which I have. *Cui similem non vidi*, Whose like I never saw. *Prae quo ceteri sordent*, In comparison of whom the rest are little worth.

Obs. Nouns interrogatives and indefinites follow the rules of the relative; as, *qualis, quantus, quis, quotus, uter*; and always stand before the word that governs them, as the relative doth; as, *Hei mihi, qualis erat!* Ah me, what an one was he? *Talis erat, qualem nunquam vidi*, He was such an one, as I never saw.

CONSTRUCTION of NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

I. **W**HEN two substantives come together, signifying different things, that which is the latter in sense, is put in the genitive case;* as, *Crescit amor nummi*, The love of money increases.

Obs. 1. This genitive case is often turned into an adjective possessive; as, *Patris domus*, The house of my father; *Paterna domus*, My father's house: And sometimes into a dative; as, *Herus tibi*, Your master; *Mihi pater*, My father.

Obs. 2. An adjective in the neuter gender put alone, the word *negotium* or *tempus* being left out, or in the masculine gender, *homo* being left out, imitates the construction of substantives; as, *Solus sapiens est dives*, The wise man only is rich. *Multi multa loquuntur*, Many men speak many things. *Paululum pecuniae*, A very little money. *Hoc noctis*, This time of night.

Obs. 3. The genitive case is sometimes put alone, and the former substantive understood by the figure *ellipsis*; as, *Ubi ad Dianae veneris, ito ad dextram*, When you come to Diana's, turn to the right: Here the word *templum* is understood.

II. Two or more substantives belonging to the same thing, are put in the same case; as, *Pater meus vir amat me puerum*, My father (being) a man, loveth me a child.

III. When the latter of two substantives signifies the praise or dispraise of a person or thing, it may be put in the ablative case, or in the genitive;§ as, *Vir nullâ fide*, A man of no integrity. *Ingenui vultus puer*, A boy of an ingenuous aspect.

IV. *Opus* and *usus*, signifying need, require an ablative case;§ as, *Authoritate tuâ nobis opus est*, We have need of your authority. *Multis libris usus est discipulo*, A scholar hath need of many books.

V. *Opus* is sometimes put adjectively, and signifies necessary; *Dux nobis et auctor opus est*, A leader and an adviser is necessary for us.

CONSTRUCTION of ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives with a Genitive Case.

I. **A**DJECTIVES that signify desire, knowledge, remembrance, care, fear, guilt, and their contraries, require a genitive case;‡ as, *Avidus novitatis*, Fond of novelty. *Praescius futuri*,

* The english sign is of: That which is latter in sense, is sometimes in english set first with 's or a hyphen after it; as, *Cicero's eloquence*, i. e. The eloquence of Cicero. The city-walls, i. e. The walls of the city.

§ The english sign is of. | The english sign is of, and sometimes in.

Foreknowing what is to come. *Memor esto brevis aevi*, Be mindful of the shortness of life. *Timidus lucis*, Afraid of the light. *Rudis literarum*, Ignorant of letters. *Immemor mandati*, Unmindful of the command. *Reus furti*, Accused of theft.

II. Adjectives ending in *ax*, derived from verbs, require a genitive case; as, *Audax ingenii*, Bold in nature. *Tempus edax rerum*, Time a devourer of all things.

III. Partitives,¹ comparatives, superlatives, numerals, and other adjectives put partitively, require a genitive case, whose gender they commonly follow; as, *Utrum horum?* Whether of these? *Quisquis deorum*, Whoever of the Gods. *Fortior manuum*, The stronger of the hands. *Doctissimus poetarum*, The most learned of the poets. *Tres fratrum*, Three of the brothers. *Primus regum*, The first of the kings. *Nigrae lanarum*, Black wool. *Nemo mortalium*, No mortal.

Obs. They are used also with these prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *inter*, *ante*; as, *Tertius ab Aenea*, The third from Aeneas. *Alter e vobis*, The one of you. *Solus de superis*, He only of the gods above. *Doctissimus ex poetis, vel inter poetas*, The most learned of the poets. *Primus inter omnes*, The first among them all. *Primus ante omnes*, The first of all.—*Secundus* sometimes governs a dative; as, *Secundus nulli*, Inferior to none.

IV. When a question is asked, the answer to it shall be of the same case and tense, unless a word of a different construction be made use of; as, *Quarum rerum nulla est satietas?* *Divitiarum*, Of what things is there no fulness? Of riches. *Quid rerum geritur?* *Consultur*, What are they doing? They are consulting. *Furtive accusas, an homicidii?* *Utrouque*, Do you accuse of theft, or murder? Of both. *Cujus est hic codex?* *Meus*, Whose book is this? Mine.

Adjectives with a Dative.

I. **A**DJECTIVES signifying profit, disprofit, likeness, unlikeness, pleasure, submission, or relation to any thing, require a dative of the person or thing to or for whose use, benefit, or damage, something is applied;² as, *Sis bonus tuis*, Be kind to your friends. *Inimicus quieti*, Averse to ease. *Aequalis Hectori*, Equal to Hector. *Color contrarius albo*, The colour contrary to white.

¹ Partitives are adjectives signifying a part of many, or many taken severally, and as it were one by one: as, *Aliquis, alius, alter, medius, nullus, quidam, quilibet, qui unus, quis, quisquam, quisque, reliquus, solus, ullus, uter*; or universality, as, *Omnis, cunctus, quisque, unusquisque*; or a negation of a person or thing, as, *Nemo, nullus, neuter*.—Signs in english are *of* or *among*.—Other adjectives may be put partitively; as, *Sanctis decernis*, i. e. *e numero decernis*.

² The english signs are *to* and *for*.

Fecundus amicis, Pleasant to his friends. *Omnibus supplex*, Submissive to all. *Proximus tibi*, Nearest to you.

Obs. 1. To this rule may be referred nouns compounded with *con*; as, *Conservus mihi*, A fellow servant with me.

Obs. 2. Some of these seem to be put substantively, and govern the genitive; as, *Par hujus*, Like this man. *Affines harum rerum*, Partakers of these things. *Domini similis*, Like his master.

Obs. 3. *Communis*, *alicuius*, *immanis*, are joined to divers cases; as, *Commune animantium omnium est*, It is common to all living creatures. *Mors omnibus est communis*, Death is common to all. *Non aliena consilii*, Not unfit for the design. *Alienus ambitioni*, An enemy to ambition. *Non alienus a studio*, Not averse to study.

Obs. 4. *Natus*, *commodus*, *inconmodus*, *utilis*, *inutilis*, *vehemens*, *aptus*, *idoneus*, with other adjectives signifying motion or propensity to any thing, are sometimes joined to an accusative with *ad*; as, *Natus ad gloriam*, Born for glory. *Pronus ad iram*, Prone to anger.

II. Adjectives ending in *-bilis*, derived from verbs, and participials in *-dus*,³ require a dative case; as, *Placibilis* or *plendus omnibus*, To be lamented of all men. *Formidabilis* or *formidandus hosti*, To be feared by his enemy.

Adjectives with an Accusative Case.

THE measure of length, breadth, height, depth, or thickness of any thing, is put in the accusative or ablative case, and sometimes in the genitive; as, *Altus septem pedes*, Seven feet high. *Latus pedibus tribus*, Three feet broad. *Longus pedum quinquaginta*, Fifty feet long.

Adjectives with an Ablative Case.

I. ADJECTIVES signifying plenty or want, require an ablative case, and sometimes a genitive; as, *Plenus nummularum*, vel *nummis*, Full of money. *Expers fraudis*, vel *fraude*, Void of deceit.⁴

II. Adjectives govern an ablative case, which signifies the cause or manner of their quality, or the price of a thing;⁵ as, *Pallidus ira*, Pale with anger. *Facies miris modis pallida*, A face pale in a

² The difference between a *participial* and a *participle* is this, that the latter denotes time, which the former does not.

³ The english sign is *of*, or *in*.

⁵ In english the cause hath *with*, *by*, or *from*. before it; the manner, *in*, *with*, or *by*; the price, *in*, *of*, or *at*.

wonderful manner. *Asse carum est*, It is dear at a penny. *Auro venale*, To be purchased with gold.

III. *Dignus*, *indignus*, *praeditus*, *captus*, *contentus*, *extorris*, *fretus*, require an ablative case; as, *Dignus odio*, Worthy of hatred. *Praeditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Captus oculis*, Deprived of Sight. *Contentus sorte sua*, Content with his lot.

Obs. *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, sometimes admit a genitive.

IV. Comparatives govern an ablative, when they may be explained by *quam*, than; as, *Vilius argentum est auro*, Silver is of less value than gold; i. e. *quam aurum*.⁶

V. *Tanto*, *quanto*, *quo*, *eo*, and some others, which signify the measure of excess, are joined both to comparatives and superlatives; as, *Quanto doctior es, tanto sis submissior*, By how much the more learned you are, be by so much the more submissive. *Tanto pessimus*, By so much the worst. *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they covet.

CONSTRUCTION of PRONOUNS.

I. **T**H E S E genitive cases of the primitives, *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, and *vestri*, are used when a person is signified, and in a passive sense; as, *Amor tui*, The love of thee; i. e. The love with which thou art loved by another.

II. *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster* and *vester*, are used when possession is signified, and in an active sense; as, *Amor tuus*, Thy love; i. e. The love with which thou lovest another.

III. *Sui* and *suus* are reciprocals, that is, they have always relation to the principal word of the third person, which went before in the sentence; as, *Petrus nimium admiratur se*, Peter admires himself too much. *Johannes diligit Petrum, et fratrem suum*, i. e. *fratrem ipsius Johannis*, John loves Peter, and his brother, that is, John's brother.

IV. *Hic* shews him that is nearest to me; *Iste*, him that is by you; *Ille*, him that is at a distance from us both.

V. *Ille* shews the excellency of a thing; *Iste*, our contempt; as, *Alexander ille magnus*, The great Alexander. *Iste homuncio*, That pitiful little fellow.

⁶ If *quam* be expressed, the noun following must be of the same case, as the substantive before the comparative adjective.

VI. *Hic* usually refers to the latter of two things or persons going before, *Ille* to the former; as, *Agricola et pastor differunt; Ille fructum e terrâ sperat, hic e pecore*, The husbandman and the shepherd differ; the former expects advantage from the earth, the latter from his cattle.

CONSTRUCTION of VERBS.

Verbs with a Nominative Case.

I. **V**ERBS substantive, as *sum*,⁷ *forem*, *fio*, *existo*; verbs passive of calling, as, *nominor*, *appellor*, *dicor*, *vocor*, *nuncupor*, and the like to them; as, *existimor*, *habeor*, *salutor*, *videor*, have the same case after them, as they have before them; as,⁸ *Deus est summum bonum*, God is the chief good. *Perpusilli vocantur nani*, Very little persons are called dwarfs. *Natura beatis omnibus esse dedit*, Nature hath granted to all to be happy. *Hypocrita cupit se vidéri justum*, An hypocrite desires that he may seem righteous.

Obs. Most verbs may have a nominative case after them of an adjective or participle, agreeing with the nominative before them, in case, gender, and number; as, *Pii orant taciti*, Pious men pray silently. *Malus pastor dormit supinus*, A bad shepherd sleeps with his face upwards. *Somnias vigilans*, Thou dreamest waking.

Verbs with a Genitive Case.

I. **T**HE verb *sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, requires a genitive case; as, *Pecus est Meliboei*, The cattle is Melibeus's. *Cujusvis hominis est errare*, It is the property of any man to mistake. *Adolescentis est majores natu revereri*, It is the duty of a young man to reverence his elders.

Obs. These pronouns, *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter*, and *veſter*, in ſuch manner of ſpeaking, are uſed in the nominative; and when property or duty is ſignified they agree with *officium*, *negotium*, or *munus*, underſtood; as, *Haec domus eſt veſtra*, This houſe is yours.

⁷ *Sum*, I am; *forem*, I might be; *fio*, I am made; *exiſto*, I am: *Nominor*, I am named; *appellor*, I am called; *dicor*, I am ſaid; *vocor*, I am called; *nuncupor*, I am named: *Exiſtimor*, I am thought; *habeor*, I am accounted; *ſalutor*, I am ſaluted; *videor*, I ſeem.

⁸ Verbs that denote bodily moving, reſting, or doing, called *verbs of geſture*, have after them a nominative caſe of the noun or participle, declaring the manner of doing or ſuffering; as, *Incēdo claudus*, I go lame.—If the infinitive mood of theſe verbs have no nominative caſe before them, the word that follows, whether it be ſubſtantive or adjective, is put in the nominative.

Non est mentiri meum, It is not my property to lye. *Tuum est omnia juxta pati*, It is thy duty to suffer all things alike.

II. Verbs of accusing, condemning, warning, acquitting, and the like, require a genitive case of the crime, cause, or thing; and sometimes an ablative, with, or without the preposition *de*;⁹ as, *Alterum incusat probri*, He accuseth another of dishonesty. *Furti absolutus est*, He is acquitted of theft. *Condemnabo te eodem crimine*, I will condemn you of the same crime. *Admonui te de*¹⁰ *câ re*, I have put you in mind of that matter.

Obs. *Uterque*, *nullus*, *alter*, *neuter*, *alius*, and adjectives of the superlative degree, after verbs of that kind, are put in the ablative case only; *Accusas furti, an stupri, an utroque, sive de utroque?* Do you accuse of theft, or dishonesty, or both? *De plurimâ accusaris*, You are accused of very many things.

III. *Satago*, *Misereor*, and *misereor*, require a genitive case; as, *Rerum suarum satagit*, He is busy about his own affairs. *Miserere laborum*, Pity our distresses.

IV. *Reminiscor*, *obliscor*, *recordor*, *memini*, govern a genitive, or an accusative; as, *Datæ fidei, vel datam fidem reminiscitur*, He remembers his promise. *Obliscitur vitiorum suorum, vel vitia sua*, He forgets his own vices. *Memento hujus diei, vel hunc diem*, Remember this day.—But we say, *Memini de te*, I spake of you.

V. *Potior* governs a genitive, or an ablative; as, *Romani armorum potius sunt*, The Romans gained the arms. *Trois potiuntur arenâ*, The Trojans get to shore.

Verbs with a Dative Case.

I. **A**LL manner of verbs put acquitively, govern a dative case of the person or thing, to, or for which any thing is done, or acquired, after what manner soever; as, *Non omnibus dormio*, I sleep not to all men. *Tibi seris, tibi etiam metis*, You sow for yourself, and you reap for yourself.

To this Rule belong Verbs of various Sorts.

I. **V**ERBS signifying advantage or disadvantage, govern the dative; as, *Non potes mihi commodare*, You cannot be of service to me. *Umbræ nocent frugibus*, Shadows hurt the corn.

Obs. Some of these, as *juro*, *laedo*, *deleto*, and some others, require an accusative; as, *Requies quies plurimum juvat*, Rest very

⁹ The English sign is of

¹⁰ Verbs of warning or admonishing have always the preposition expressed.

much delights a wearied man. *Ah! te ne frigora laedant, Alas!* (I am afraid) lest the cold should hurt you. *Cur ego amicum offendam?* Why should I offend my friend?

II. Verbs of comparing govern a dative,¹¹ as, *Parvis componere magna solébam*, I used to compare great things with small.

Obs. Verbs of comparing sometimes govern an ablative, with the preposition *cum*, or an accusative, with the preposition *ad*; as, *Comparatur cum illo, vel ad illum*, He is compared with him, or to him.

III. Verbs of giving and restoring, govern a dative of the person; as, *Fortuna multis nimium dedit*, Fortune has given too much to many. *Redde mihi librum*, Restore me my book.

IV. Verbs of promising, paying, and trusting, govern a dative of the person; as, *Hoc tibi promitto*, I promise you this. *Aes alienum mihi numeravit*, He paid me the debt. *Crede mihi*, Trust me.

V. Verbs of commanding, and telling, govern a dative of the person; as, *Imperat liberis*,¹² He commands his children. *Cave cui dicas*,¹³ Be careful whom you speak it to.

VI. Verbs of complying with, and opposing, govern a dative case; as, *Pius filius obtemperat patri*, A dutiful son obeys his father. *Ignavis precibus fortuna repugnat*,¹⁴ Fortune opposes sluggish prayers.

VII. Verbs of threatening, and being angry,¹⁵ govern a dative of the person; as, *Utrique mortem minatus est*, He threatened them both with death. *Adolescenti succenset*, He is angry with the young man.

VIII. *Sum*, with its compounds, except *possum*, governs a dative; as, *Rex pius est reipublicae ornamentum*, A pious king is an ornament to the state. *Mihi nec obest, nec prodest*, It neither hurts, nor profits me.

IX. Certain verbs compound with *prae*, *ad*, *con*, *sub*, *ante*, *post*, *ob*, *in*, *inter*, *satis*, *benè*, *malè*, require a dative; as, *Praeluxit majoribus*, He outshone his ancestors. *Hoc accessit meis malis*, This was added to my misfortunes. *Convixit nobis*, He lived with us.

¹¹ The english sign is *with*.

¹² *Jubeo*, *rego*, and *gubernare*, govern the accusative.

¹³ *Loquor*, an accusative with *ad*.

¹⁴ *Oppugno* governs the accusative.

¹⁵ Verbs of threatening have *with* before the *thing*, which must be put in the accusative: Verbs of anger have *with* before the *person*, which must be put in the dative.

These, and all other verbs put acquisitively, if transitive, beside the dative, govern an accusative of the *object*: These cases, though usually called the accusative of the thing, and dative of the person, do not always hold.—*To*, the sign of the dative, is frequently understood.—*To*, after verbs signifying or implying *motion*, is made by *ad*.

Subolet uxóri, My wife smells it out. *Antefero pacem bello*, I prefer peace before war. *Postpono famae pecuniam*, I postpone money to reputation. *Nemini obtrúdi potest*, She can be thrust upon no body. *Impendit omnibus periculum*, Danger hangs over all. *Interfuit negotio*, He was present at the business. *Satisfaciam tibi*, I will satisfy you.

Obs. Many of these change the dative sometimes for the accusative, or ablative; as, *Praestat alius alium*, One exceeds another. *Anteit multos*, He excels many men. *In amore insunt vitia*, There are weaknesses in love.—But *praeceo*, to excel, *praecédo*, *praecurro*, *praevertó*, *praevertor*, will have an accusative only.

X. *Est* and *suppetit*, when they signify *to have*, govern a dative; as, *Est mihi pater*, I have a father. *Suppetit mihi pecunia*, I have money.

XI. *Sum*, taken for *affero*, to bring, with several other verbs, govern two datives, one of the person, and another of the thing; as, *Est mihi voluptati*, It is, or brings a pleasure to me. *Hoc mihi vitio vertis*, You impute this, as a fault, to me. *Dedit mihi vestem pignori*, He gave his garment to me for a pawn.

XII. These verbs have a various construction:

1. In the same sense; as, *Dono tibi hoc munus*, I present this gift to you: *Dono te hoc munere*, I present you with this gift. *Aspersit mihi labem*, He cast a blemish upon me: *Aspersit me labe*, He aspersed me with a blemish. *Instrávit equo penulam*, He threw his cloke upon his horse: *Instrávit equum penulá*, He covered his horse with his cloke. *Impertio tibi salutem*; *Impertio te salutem*, I send you my compliments. *Tempero moderor tibi et te*, I rule you. *Refero, scribo, mitto tibi, vel ad te*, I refer the matter, write, send to you. *Hacc fratri mecum non conveniunt*, My brother and I don't agree about these things. *Saevis inter se convenit urfis*, The savage bears agree with one another.

2. In a different sense; as, *Consulis tibi*, I advise you, or take care of you: *Consulo te*, I ask your advice. *Consulis istuc pessimè in illum*, You order that matter very ill against him. *Aemulor tibi*, I envy thee: *Aemulor te*, I imitate thee. *Metuo, timeo, formido, caveo tibi, vel de te*, I am in fear; i. e. I am solicitous for you: *Metuo, timeo, formido caveo te, vel a te*, I am afraid of you. *Do tibi literas*, I send a letter by you: *Do ad te literas*, I send a letter to you. *Auscullo tili*, I obey you: *Auscullo te*, I hear you.

Note. *Tibi* or *sibi* are sometimes added for the sake of elegance, or to give a gay or pointed turn to the expression: as, *Seco tibi gladio hunc ingulo*, I cut his throat with his own weapon.

Verbs with an Accusative Case.

I. **V**ERBS transitive (whether active or deponent) govern an accusative case of the *object*; ¹⁶ as, *Percontatorem fugito*, Avoid an inquisitive person.

II. Verbs neuter may have an accusative case of a near signification, and often an ablative; as, *Ire viam*, To be going a journey. *Duram servit servitutem*, He serves a hard service. *Diu vitâ vivere*, To live a long life. *Ire rectâ viâ*, To go the direct way. *Obiit morte*, He is dead.

III. Verbs of asking, teaching, cloathing, and concealing, govern two accusatives, one of the person, another of the thing; as, *Posce Deum veniam*, Ask pardon of God. *Doceo te literas*, I teach you letters. *Induit se calceos*, He put on his Shoes. *Id me celat*, He conceals it from me.

Obs. 1. Verbs of asking sometimes change the accusative of the person into an ablative; as, *Veniam orémus ab ipso*, Let us beg this favour of him.

Obs. 2. Verbs of cloathing sometimes change the accusative of the thing into an ablative, or the accusative of the person into a dative; as, *Induo te tunicâ*, or *Induo tibi tunicam*, I put you on your coat.

Verbs with an Ablative Case.¹⁷

I. **A**NY Verb governs an ablative case of the word that signifies the *instrument*, the *cause*, or *manner* of an action; ¹⁸ as, *Ferit me gladio*, He strikes me with a sword. *Tacco metu*, I am silent for fear. *Summâ eloquentiâ causam egit*, He pleaded the cause with very great eloquence.

Obs. The ablative of the *cause*, or *manner*, hath sometimes a preposition added to it; as, *Baccharis præ ebrietate*, You rave through drunkenness. *Summâ cum humanitate tractavit hominem*, He treated the man with the highest courtesy.¹⁹

¹⁶ Verbs transitive are such as express an action, that passes on some person or thing, which is here called the *object*, and in english will take the word *it* after them, as, *aperit it*; and such as express an action which terminates in the doer, are included under *neuters*.

¹⁷ Transitive verbs, beside the ablative case, will have an accusative of the object.

¹⁸ The signs of the instrument are *with*, or *by*: those of the cause are *at*, *for*, *with*, *through*, or *by*: and those of the manner are *with*, *in*, *by*, or *after*.—The Instrument is known by the question *Wherewith?* The Cause by the question *Why?* The Manner by the question *How?*

¹⁹ The ablative of concomitancy hath generally *cum* express.

II. The noun of *price* is put after verbs and adjectives in the ablative case;²⁰ as, *Teruncio emi*, I bought it for a farthing. *Multo sanguine victoria stetit*, The victory cost much blood. *Carum esse*, Dear at a penny.

Obs. 1. *Vili*,²¹ *paulo*, *minimo*, *magno*, *nimio*, *plurimo*, *dimidio*, *duplo*, are often put alone, the word *pretio* being understood; as, *Vili venit triticum*, Wheat is sold at a low rate.

Obs. 2. Except these genitives, when they are put alone without substantives; *tanti*,²² *quantum*, *pluris*, *minoris*, *tantidem*, *quantivis*, *quantilibet*, *quancunque*; as, *Tanti eris aliis*, *quantum tibi fueris*, You will be of such value to others, as you are to yourself.

Obs. 3. *Flocci*,²³ *nauci*, *nibili*, *pili*, *assis*, *hujus*, *teruncii*, are peculiarly added to verbs of esteeming, or valuing; also *magni*, *parvi*, *maximi*, *minimi*, *plurimi*; as, *Ego illum flocci pendo*, I don't value him of a straw. *Non hujus te facio*, I don't regard you this. *Me pili aestimat*, He esteems me not of an hair. *Magni aestimabat pecuniam*, He valued money at a great rate. *Parvi pendo*, I reckon it little worth.

III. Verbs of abounding, filling, loading, and their contraries, govern an ablative;²⁴ as, *Amore abundas*, You abound with what you love. *Divitiis suos explevit*, He filled his friends with riches. *Onerant te mendaciis*, They load you with lyes. *Indiget pecuniâ*, He wants money. *Ego hoc te fasce levabo*, I will ease you of this burden. *Spoliavit me bonis*, He plundered me of my goods.

Obs. Some of these govern a genitive; as, *Abundans lactis*, Abounding in milk. *Indiget patris*, He has need of his father. *Implentur Bacchi*, They are filled with wine. *Eget defensionis*, He wants defence.

IV. *Fungor*, *fruor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *vescor*, *nitor*, govern an ablative case; as, *Fungantur officiis*, Let them discharge their duties. *Fruimur alienâ insaniâ*, We profit by another's madness. *Utor libris*, I use my books. *Abutitur patientiâ nostrâ*, He abuses our patience.

²⁰ The english signs are *for*, *from*, *at*, or *with*.

²¹ *Vili*, at a low rate; *paulo*, for little; *minimo*, for very little; *magno*, for much; *nimio*, for too much; *plurimo*, for very much; *dimidio*, for half; *duplo*, for twice as much.

²² *Tanti*, for so much; *quantum*, for how much; *pluris*, for more; *minoris*, for less; *tantidem*, for just so much; *quantivis*, for as much as you please; *quantilibet*, the same; *quancunque*, for how much soever.

²³ *Flocci*, of a lock of wool; *nauci*, of a nut-shell; *nibili*, of nothing; *pili*, of an hair; *assis*, of a penny; *hujus*, of this; *teruncii*, of a farthing; *magni*, much; *parvi*, little; *maximi*, very much; *minimi*, very little; *plurimi*, very much.

²⁴ The english signs after verbs of abounding, filling, and loading, are often *with*, or *in*; and *of*, or *from*, after verbs of wanting, emptying, or unloading.

Vescor carnibus, I eat flesh. *Virtute niti decet*, It becomes us to rely on virtue.

V. *Mereor*, with an adverb, governs an ablative, with the preposition *de*; as, *De me bene meritus est*, He has deserved well of me.

VI. Some verbs of receiving, distance, or taking away, have an ablative, with *a*, *ab*, *e*, *ex*, or *de*.²⁵ and sometimes a dative; as, *Accépi literas a patre*, I received a letter from my father. *Audivi ex nuncio*, I heard by the messenger. *Longè distat a nobis*, He is a great way distant from us. *Eripui te e malis*, I delivered thee from evils. *Eripuit illi vitam*, He took his life from him.

VII. Verbs of comparing or exceeding, may have an ablative case of the noun that signifies the measure of excess; as, *Multo praeſtat cavere*, 'Tis much better to avoid. *Multis partibus te vincit*, He excels you many degrees.

VIII. A noun or a pronoun, two nouns, or a noun and a pronoun, with a participle expressed or understood, if they be govern'd of no other word, are put in the ablative case absolute;²⁶ as, *Imperante Augúſto, natus eſt Chriſtus*, Christ was born, when Augustus was emperor. *Me duce, vinces*, I being captain, thou shalt overcome.

IX. An ablative case of the part affected, and by the poets an accusative, is added to verbs and adjectives signifying some passion or affection of the mind or body; as, *Aegrótat animo*, He is sick in mind. *Aeger pedibus, vel pedes*, Distempered in his feet. *Rubet capillos*, His hair is red. *Aethiops albus dentes*, An Aethiopian white as to his teeth.

Obs. Several verbs signifying passion and affection, are used also with a genitive; as, *Discrucior animi*, I am tormented in mind. *Deſipiebam mentis*, I doted.

X. Diverse cases, by different rules, may be set after the same verbs; as, *Dedit mihi vestem pignori propriâ manu*, He gave his garment to me with his own hand for a pledge.

Verbs Passive.

VERBS passive, and neuter passives, have after them an ablative case of the *doer*, with the preposition *a*, or *ab*, and sometimes a dative; as, *Laudatur ab omnibus*, He is praised by all.

²⁵ From is the sign in english after these verbs; likewise *of*, *by*, or *concerning* after verbs of receiving — Transitive verbs, beside the ablative after these verbs, and the ablative or genitive of the price or value, govern also an accusative of the object.

²⁶ It may be englished with these signs, *-ing whilst*, *as*, if the time of the participle be present; and *being*, *having*, *after*, *when*, if the participle be perfect.

Vapulábis a praeceptóre, You will be beaten by the master. *Non cernitur ulli*, He is not seen by any one.

Obs. The other cases are the same after passives, which belonged to them as actives; as, *Accusáris a me furti*, You are accused of theft by me. *Dedoceberis a me istos mores*, You shall be untaught those manners by me. *Privaberis magistrátu*, You shall be deprived of your office.

Verbs Infinitive.

THE latter of two verbs, with no nominative case between them, is the infinitive mood; as, *Cupio discere*, I desire to learn.

Obs. Participles, and most adjectives, (excepting chiefly such as govern a genitive case) may have an infinitive mood after them;²⁷ as, *Jussus confundere foedus*, Being ordered to violate the treaty. *Dignus amári*, Worthy to be loved.

Obs. 2. Verbs infinitive are sometimes put alone, by the figure Ellipsis; as, *Hinc spargere voces in vulgum ambiguas*, Upon this (he began) to scatter abroad doubtful sayings: *incipiébat*, he began, is understood.

GERUNDS and SUPINES.

GERUNDS, and the supine in *um*, govern such cases as the verbs they come of; as, *Otium scribendi literas*, Leisure of writing letters. *Ad consulendum tibi*, To consult for thee. *Auditum poetas*, To hear the poets.

GERUNDS.

I. GERUNDS in *di* are genitive cases, and depend on certain substantives and adjectives;²⁸ as, *Amor habendi*, The desire of getting. *Certus eundi*, Resolved to go.

Obs. Sometimes a genitive case plural is elegantly put after gerunds in *di*; as, *Permissa est diripiendi pomerum licentia*, Liberty was granted to scramble for fruit.

²⁷ The poets use the infinitive mood after substantives or adjectives, instead of the genitive case of the gerund; as, *Tempus abire*, It is time to go; for *Tempus abeundi*.

²⁸ In english, an infinitive or participle of the present tense, after a word which governs the genitive, must be made in latin by the gerund in *di*.

II. Gerunds in *do* are ablative cases, and depend on these prepositions, *a, ab, abs, de, e, ex, cum, in, pro*; ²⁹ as, *Deterrentur a discendo*, They are discouraged from learning. *Consultat de transfundo*, He consults about passing over. *Gloria comparatur ex defendendo*, Glory is gotten by defending. *Petam mercédem pro vapulando*, I will demand wages for being beaten.

Obs. They are used also without a preposition, in the ablative or dative; as, *Scribendo discas scribere*, You will learn to write by writing. *Semen utile ferendo*, Seed fit for sowing.

III. Gerunds in *dum* are commonly accusative cases, and depend on these prepositions, *inter, ante, ad, ob, propter*; ³⁰ as, *Inter coenandum*, At supper time. *Ante domandum*, Before they are tamed. *Locus ad agendum*, A place to plead in.

Obs. When necessity is signified, they are nominative cases, the verb *est* being added; ³¹ as, *Vigilandum est ei*, He must watch. *Abeundum est mihi*, I must go hence.

IV. Gerunds are sometimes changed into nouns adjective; as, *Generandi gloria mellis*, The glory of making honey. *Ne delecteris criminibus inferendis*, Be not delighted in bringing accusations.

S U P I N E S.

I. **T**HE supine in *um* is put for the infinitive active, after a verb, or participle, signifying motion to a place; as, *Spectatum³² veniunt*, They come to see. *Miutes sunt missi speculatum*, The soldiers were sent to take a view.

II. The supine in *u* may be put for the infinitive passive, after some adjectives; ³³ as, *Foedum factu*, Dishonourable to be done: *Turpe dictu*, Indecent to be spoke; for *Foedum fieri*, *Turpe dici*.

²⁹ In english a participle in *-ing*, after these signs, *in, by, of, with, for, from*, is made by the gerund in *do*, with a preposition: If it signify the cause, or manner, of doing, the preposition is omitted.

³⁰ When the english of the infinitive mood shews the cause or reason, end or purpose of a thing, it is often made by the gerund in *dum*, with *ad, ob, or propter*; but *inter* and *ante* respect time.

³¹ This gerund, with the verb *est*, governs a dative of the person: English signs are *must*, or *ought*.

³² This supine may be varied several ways; as, *Veniunt ut spectent, spectaturi, ad spectandum*, &c.

³³ As, *Dignus, indignus, facilis, difficilis, arduus, foedus, mirabilis, caesus, optimus, prolixus, turpis, utilis*, and the like; also the substantives *fas, nefas*, and *opus*; as, *fas dictu, nefas dictu, scitu opus*. Cic. and may also be varied (1) by an infinitive mood; as, *Cognosci utilia* Val. Max. (2) by the gerund in *dum*; as, *Adjudicandum facillima*. Cic. (3) by verbals; as, *Cognitione digna*. Cic.

T I M E.

I. **N**OUNS that signify part of time, and answer to the question When? are commonly put in the ablative case, seldom in the accusative; as, *Nocte latent mendae*, Blemishes are concealed in the night. *Id tempus creatus est consul*, He was made consul about that time.

II. Nouns that signify duration of time, and answer to the question, How long? are put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as, *Tercentum regnabitur annos*, Kings shall reign full three hundred years. *Imperavit triennio*, He ruled three years.

Obj. Sometimes a preposition is added to them; as, *In paucis diebus*, Within a few days. *De die*, By day. *De nocte*, By night. *Promitte in diem*, I promise for a day. *Annos ad quinquaginta natus*, Fifty years old. *Per tres annos*, For three years. *Tertio, vel ad tertium calendas, vel calendarum*, Upon the third of the calends.

S P A C E of P L A C E.

NOUNS that signify space, or distance of one place from another, are put in the accusative case, and sometimes in the ablative; as, *Mille passus processeram*, I had advanced a mile. *Abest bidui spatium*, He is distant two days journey.

N A M E S of P L A C E S.

I. **I**N or at a city or town is expressed by the genitive case, if its proper name be of the first or second declension, and the singular number; as, *Quid Romae faciam?* What should I do at Rome? *Habitabat Rhodi*, She dwelt at Rhodes.—So the common names, *humi, domi, militiae, belli*; as, *Procumbit humi bos*, The ox lieth on the ground. *Domi, bellicque simul vivimus*, We lived together at home, and in war.

Obj. But if the name of the city or town be of the third declension, or the plural number only, it is put in the ablative case; as, *Tiburini genitus*, Born at Tibur. *Thebis nutritus*, Brought up at Thebes.—So *Ruri, or rure habitat*, He lives in the country.

Obj. To a city or town, is expressed by the accusative case of its proper name, for the most part, without a preposition; as, *Eo Londinum*, I go to London. *Concessi Cantabrigiam*, I went to Cambridge.—So *rus* and *domus*; as, *Ego rus ibo*, I will go into the country. *Ite domum*, Go home.

III. From a city or town, is expressed by the ablative case of its proper name, for the most part, without a preposition; as, *Roma profectus est*, He went from Rome.—So *Exiit domo*, He went from home. *Rure rediit*, He returned from the country.

IV. Common

IV. Common names of places, and names of countries, are commonly put with a preposition; as, *In foro versatur*, He frequents the market. *Vivo in Angliâ*, I live in England. *Ibant ad templum*, They went to church. *Per mare ibis ad Indos*, You will go by sea to the Indies. *E Siciliâ discessit*, He departed from Sicily.

Obs. Sometimes countries are put without a preposition, and cities have one; *Sardiniam venit*, He came to Sardinia. *Cic. Navigare Aegyptum*, To sail to Egypt. *Liv. Literae Macedoniâ allatae*, Letters brought from Macedonia. *Liv. In Epheso est*, He is at Ephesus. *Plaut. Navis in Cajetâ parata est*, A ship is ready at Cajeta. *Cic. A Brundisio fama nulla venerat*, No news was come from Brundisy, *Cic.*

IMPERSONALS.

I. **INTEREST** and *refert* require a genitive case after them, except *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, and *cujus*; as, *Interest magistratûs*, It concerns the magistrate. *Refert reipublicae*, It concerns the state. *Tua refert teipsum nôsse*,³⁴ It concerns you to know yourself.—These genitives, *tanti*, *quantum*, *magni*, *parvi*, are often added; as, *Patris parvi interest*, It concerns my father little. *Vestra magni refert*, It concerns you much.

II. Impersonals put acqvisitively, require a dative; but transitive, an accusative; as, *A Deo nobis beneficit*, We enjoy blessings from God. *Me juvat ire per altum*, It delights me to travel by sea.—But these three, *attinet*, *pertinet*, *spectat*, require an accusative with *ad*; as, *Spectat ad omnes*, It concerns all men.

III. *Poenitet*,³⁵ *taedet*, *miseret*, *miserescit*, *pudet*, *piget*, after an accusative of the person, govern also a genitive of the person or thing; as, *Fratri me quidem pudet, pigetque*, Truly I am ashamed of, and sorry for my brother. *Poenitet eum peccati*, He is sorry for his fault.

IV. *Coepit*,³⁶ *incipit*, *desinit*, *debet*, *solet*, *poteſt*, when they come before impersonals, do themselves become impersonals; as, *Incipit pudere me*, I begin to be ashamed. *Desinit illum studii taedere*, He

³⁴ An impersonal is said to have no nominative case before it, because 'tis often not expreſt: In this example, the words *teipsum nôsse*, stand for the nominative to *refert*.

³⁵ *Poenitet*, it repents; *taedet*, it wearies; *miseret*, *miserescit*, it pities; *pudet*, it ſhames; *piget*, it grieves.

³⁶ *Coepit*, it began; *incipit*, it begins; *desinit*, it ceases; *debet*, it ought; *solet*, it is wont; *poteſt*, it is poſſible.

ceases to be weary of study: *Tædère solet avâros impendii*, Covetous men use to be grieved at expence.

V. A verb impersonal, of the passive voice, may be taken for each person of both numbers indifferently ; as, *Statur*, it is stood ; for *I stand*, *thou standest*, *he stands*, &c.

CONSTRUCTION of PARTICIPLES.

I. **P**ARTICIPLES govern such cases as the verbs they come of ; as, *Tendens ad sidera palmas*, Spreading his hands towards heaven. *Diligendus ab omnibus*, To be loved by all.

Obs. Participles of the passive voice sometimes govern a dative, especially if they end in *us* ; as, *Formidatus Othóni*, Dreaded by Otho. *Exorandus mihi*, To be prevailed upon by me.

II. Participles, when they become nouns, require a genitive case ; as, *Aliéni appetens*, *sui profusus*, Greedy of another man's, lavish of his own.

III. *Exósus*,³⁷ *perósus*, *pertaesus*, when they signify actively, govern an accusative case ; as, *Segnitiam perósus*, Utterly hating idleness.—But when passively, a dative ; as, *Exósus Deo*, Hated by God.

IV. *Natus*,³⁸ *prognátus*, *satus*, *cretus*, *creátus*, *ortus*, *editus*, govern an ablative case ; as, *Bonis prognáta parentibus*, Born of good parents.

CONSTRUCTION of ADVERBS with NOUNS.

I. **E***N* and *ecce* are followed by a nominative, or an accusative ; as, *En Priamus*, vel *Priamum* ! Lo Priam ! *Ecce status noster*, vel *statum nostrum*, See our condition.—But when they upbraid, by an accusative only ; as, *En habitum*, Behold his dress. *Ecce miserum*, See the wretch.

II. Some adverbs of *place*, *time*, and *quantity*, govern a genitive ; as, *Ubi gentium* ? Where in the world ? *Tunc temporis*, At that time. *Satis eloquentiae*, Eloquence enough.

³⁷ *Exósus*, hated ; *perósus*, mortally hated ; *pertaesus*, weary of.

³⁸ *Natus*, *prognátus*, born ; *satus*, sprung ; *cretus*, descended ; *creátus*, produced ; *ortus*, risen ; *editus*, brought forth.

III. Derivative adverbs govern the cases of their primitives; as, *Optimè omnium dixit*, He spoke the best of all. *Similiter huic*, Like this man. *Propiùs urbem*, Nearer the city. *Propiùs illo*, Nearer than he.—Because *optimus* governs a genitive; *similis*, a dative; *prope*, an accusative; *propior*, an ablative.

IV. *Aliter*, *secus*, *ante*, *post*, are often joined to an ablative; as, *Multo aliter*, Much otherwise. *Paulo secus*, Little otherwise. *Multo antè*, Much before. *Longo post tempore*, A long time after.

CONSTRUCTION of ADVERBS with VERBS.

I. *Ubi*, *postquam*, and *cum*, or *quum*, when they are adverbs of time; *simul ac*, *simul atque*, *simul ut*, *utcunque*, are joined to an indicative, or a subjunctive; as, *Ubi lavimus*, or *laverimus*, When we have washed. *Postquam veneram*, or *venissem*, After I was come. *Cum faciam*, or *fecero*, When I have done it. *Simul ac erat*, or *esset*, When it was. *Simul atque adolescet*, or *adoleverit*, As soon as he shall be grown up. *Simul ut inflabit*, or *inflaverit* tubicen, As soon as the trumpeter shall blow. *Utcunque est*, or *sit*, However it be.

II. *Donec*, as long as, governs an indicative; as, *Donec eris felix*, As long as you shall be happy. But *donec*, until, governs an indicative, or subjunctive; as, *Donec jussit*, Until he gave orders. *Donec aqua sit decocta*, Until the water be boiled.

III. *Dum*, as long as, governs an indicative; as, *Dum apparatur*, While they are making ready.—But *dum*, so that, or until, a subjunctive; as, *Dum prosim tibi*, So that I may profit you. *Dum viderit*, Until he see.

IV. *Quoad*, how long, is joined to an indicative, or subjunctive; as, *Quoad expectas?* When do you expect? *Quoad possent*, As long as they could.—*Quoad*, until, a subjunctive only; as, *Quoad mittatur*, 'Till he be sent.

V. *Quasi*, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *perinde ac si*, *haud secus ac si*, as if, tho', are joined to a subjunctive; as, *Quasi (ceu, tanquam) non nòrimus*, As if we knew not. *Perinde ac si (haud secus ac si) ipse venisses*, As if you had come yourself.—But *Quasi*, *ceu*, *tanquam*, like as, or even as, to an indicative.

VI. *Ne*, when it forbids, is joined to an imperative, or subjunctive; as, *Ne saevi*, Be not so hasty. *Ne metuas*, Be not afraid.

CONSTRUCTION of CONJUNCTIONS.

I. **CONJUNCTIONS** copulative, and disjunctive,³⁹ join like cases, moods and tenses, together; as, *Petrus et Johannes precabantur. et docébant*, Peter and John did pray and teach.— Unless the sense, or a various construction of the words, require otherwise; as, *Emi librum centussi et pluris*, I bought the book for an hundred pence, and more. *Vixi Romae et Venetiis*, I lived at Rome and at Venice. *Et habétur, et referétur tibi a me gratia*, Thanks both are given, and shall be given you by me.

II. *Etsi, tamétsi, etiámsi, quanquam, quamvis*, often govern a subjunctive mood; as, *Quamvis mirétur*, Though he wonder. *Licét venias*, Though you come.

III. *Ni, nisi, siquidem, quòd, quia, quàm*, are joined to an indicative, or subjunctive; as, *Quòd rediisti, or redieris gaudeo*, I am glad that you are returned.

IV. *Si* is joined to both moods; but *Si*, although, to a subjunctive only; as, *Non si me obsecret*, Not, though she intreat me.—*Siquis*, to an indicative only; as, *Siquis adest*, If any one be present.

V. *Quando, quandoquidem, quoniam, quippe*, are joined to an indicative; as, *Quoniam mihi non credis*, Because you don't believe me. *Quippe aegrótat*, Because he is sick.—*Quippe qui*, to either mood; as, *Quippe qui pejerávit, or pejcraverit*, Because he has forsworn himself.

VI. *Cum*, although, seeing, or because; also *qui*, denoting a reason, require a subjunctive; as, *Cum dicámus*, Although we say. *Cum sis aptus*, Seeing that, or because you are fit. *Stultus es, qui huic credas*, You are a fool, for believing this fellow.

VII. *Cum*, as, and *tum*, so; also *cum*, doubled, join like moods; as, *Odit cum literas, tum (edit) virtútem*, He hates both learning, and also virtue.

VIII. *Ut*, a conjunction causal, or when it signifies *lest not, although, or as being*, requires a subjunctive; as, *Ut una esset*, That he might be with them. *Metuo ut subscíbet, i. e. ne non*, I am afraid lest the stranger should not stand his ground. *Ut omnia contingant*, Tho' all things should fall out. *Ut qui fefelleris*, As being one who has deceived.—But *ut*, when it is an adverb, and signifies *as, as soon as, or asks a question*, governs an indicative; as, *Fac ut facis*, Do as you do. *Ut discessi*, As soon as I departed. *Ut valet*, How does he?

³⁹ Conjunctions copulative join the sense and verbs in a sentence together: Disjunctive join the verbs, but not the sense.

IX. Lastly,

IX. Lastly, All words, of what kind soever, put indefinitely, govern the subjunctive mood ; as, *Quae virtus, et quanta sit vivere parvo, discite*, Learn ye, what a virtue it is, and how great, to live upon a little.

CONSTRUCTION of PREPOSITIONS.*

Obs. 1. *IN*, signifying barely *in*, governs an ablative ; otherwise an accusative.

Obs. 2. *Sub*, under, an ablative ; *sub*, about, and *sub* and *subter*, supposing motion, an accusative.

Obs. 3. *Super*, above, beside, beyond, at, an accusative ; *super*, concerning, an ablative.

Obs. 4. *Tenus*, with words signifying two, or wanting the singular, governs the genitive, and is often set after its case.

Obs. 5. *Am*, *di*, *dis*, *re*, *se*, and *con*, are only to be found in compound words.

Obs. 6. The *n* in *con* is omitted, when the verb begins with a vowel ; as, *Co-emo*.

Obs. 7. *Am*, or *an*, signifies about ; *di* and *dis*, separation ; *re*, again ; *se*, asunder ; *con*, together.

Obs. 8. *Per* and *prae*, in composition, increase the force of a word ; as, *Permagnus*, Very great ; *Praedives*, Very rich.

Obs. 9. *Sub* commonly diminishes ; as, *Subtristis*, A little sad. *De*, *ex*, *in*, and *per*, vary.

Obs. 10. Prepositions without cases, turn adverbs ; as, *Poenè subit*, She follows behind.

Obs. 11. Prepositions are often understood ; as, *Habeo te loco parentis*, I esteem you in the place of a parent ; i. e. *in loco*.

Obs. 12. Verbs compounded with a preposition, often govern the case of their preposition ; as, *Praetero te*, I pass by you. *Detri-
dunt naves scopulo*, They thrust off the ships from the rock.

Obs. 13. Verbs compounded with *a*, *ab*, *ad*, *con*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*, sometimes repeat their preposition ; as, *Abstinuerunt a vino*, They abstained from wine. *Amicos advocabo ad hanc rem*, I will call my friends to this business. *Conferemus cum legibus*, We will compare it with the laws.

* *Lat. Introduction*, pag. 31.

CONSTRUCTION of INTERJECTIONS.

I. INTERJECTIONS are sometimes put without a case; as, *Hei! vereor, Alas! I am afraid.—Me miserum! Wretch that I am! (ah) omitted.*

II. *O* is found before a nominative, accusative, or vocative; as, *O festus dies! O joyful day! O fortunatos agricolas! O fortunate husbandmen! O formose puer! O pretty boy.*

III. *Heu* and *pro* are followed by a nominative, or an accusative; as, *Heu pietas! Ah his piety. Heu stirpem invisam, Ah the odious stock.—We find also, Pro sancte Jupiter.*

IV. *Hei* and *vae* are followed by a dative; as, *Hei mihi, Wo is me! Vae tibi, Woe be to thee.*

RULES for the GENDER of NOUNS.

THERE are two ways to know the gender of a noun; the first, by its signification; the second, by its termination.

Rules by signification are seven, called General Rules.

1. Proper names of Gods, Angels, Men, Months, and Winds, are Masculine.

2. Proper names of Rivers and Mountains, are generally Masculine.

3. Proper names of Goddesses, Women, Countries, Cities, and Islands, are Feminine.

4. Proper names of Gems, Poems, Trees, Herbs, and Ships, generally Feminine.

5. Nouns signifying Relations and Offices peculiar to Men, are Masculine.

6. Nouns signifying Relations and Offices peculiar to Women,⁴⁰ are Feminine.

7. Nouns denoting both Sexes are Masculine and Feminine.⁴¹

Obs. 1. Proper names sometimes take their gender from their ending, or some general word.⁴²

⁴⁰ *Hoc lupanar, scortum, prostibulum, and matrimonia, matrons or wives.*

⁴¹ So *Ego, tu, sis*, are of the same gender with the person or thing they signify.

⁴² The names of rivers and mountains, though many of them have the gender of the termination, may be masculine also, with regard to *fluvius* and *mons*. The same may be said of those that are feminine by signification; for though many of them are masculine or neuter by termination, and authors use them so, yet may they also be used in the feminine, with respect to the common names, *terra, urbs, gemma, salula, arbor, herba, navis*. Lowen.

Proprs from commons gender take.

So *dis* is male for *deus'* sake.

Plays and poems sometimes follow the gender of the person whose name they bear; as, *See amfinitus Orestes*. Juv. 1. 5.

Obs. 2.

Obs. 2. Nouns invariable, also nouns in *on*, or *um*, are neuter.⁴³

Obs. 3. When the gender cannot be known by the signification, it must be found by the termination.

EXAMPLES.

1. *Jupiter*, m. Jupiter. *Michael*, m. Michael. *Georgius*, m. George. *Aprilis*, m. April. *Auster*, m. the South-wind.—2. *Tybris*, m. Tyber. *Parnassus*, m. Parnassus.—3. *Juno*, f. Juno. *Anna*, f. Ann. *Persis*, f. Persia. *Roma*, f. Rome, *Delos*, f. Delos.—4. *Sapphirus*, f. a Sapphire. *Aeneis*, f. the Aeneid. *Pyrus*, f. a Pear-tree. *Costus*, f. Costmary. *Argo*, f. the Argo.—5. *Pater*, m. a Father. *Rex*, m. a King.—6. *Soror*, f. a Sister. *Regina*, f. a Queen.—7. *Parens*, m. a Father. *Parens*, f. a Mother.—*Obs.* 2. *Nihil*, n. nothing. *Ilion*, n. Troy. *Loncinum*, n. London.—*Obs.* 3. *Lethe*, f. *Styx*, f. names of rivers. *Aetna*, f. mount Aetna. *Sulmo*, m. *Tybur*, n. names of cities.

Rules by termination are seven, called Special Rules.

1. In the first declension, *a* and *e* are feminine; *as* and *es* masculine.

2. In the second, *er*, *ur*, *us*, *os*, masculine; *en* and *um*, neuter.

3. In the third, *an*, *in*, *on*, *o*, *er*, *or*, *os*, are masculine.

4. In the third, *as*, *es*, *is*, *aus*, *x*, *s* impure, and *io* verbal, feminine.

5. In the third, *a*, *e*, *c*, *l*, *en*, *ar*, *ur*, *us*, *t*, are neuter.

6. In the fourth, *us*, masculine; *u*, neuter; but *Hæc domus*, *manus*, *idus*, *ficus*, *acus*, *tribus*; so *porticus* and *quinqvatus*.

7. In the fifth, *es*, feminine; but *meridies*, masculine; *dies*, both.

For the exceptions to these rules, *vid.* Comp. Art. V.

⁴³ Except names of men and women.

EXAMPLES.

Penna, f. a pen. *Ode*, f. an ode. *Tiāras*, m. a turban. *Cometes*, m. a blazing star.—2. *Liber*, m. a book. *Sater*, m. full. *Annus*, m. a year. *Logos*, m. a word. *Barbiton*, n. a lute. *Ovum*, n. an egg.—3. *Pe.m*, m. a song of victory. *Delphin*, m. a dolphin. *Canon*, m. a rule. *Leo*, m. a lion. *Carcer*, m. a prison. *Amor*, m. love. *Mos*, m. a custom.—4. *Pietas*, f. devotion. *Nubes*, f. a cloud. *Navis*, f. a ship. *Chelys*, f. a harp. *Laus*, f. praise. *Nix*, f. snow. *Mens*, f. the mind. *Lectio*, f. a lesson; from *lego*.—5. *Poema*, n. a poem. *Mare*, n. the sea. *Lac*, n. milk. *Mel*, n. honey. *Carmen*, n. a verse. *Far*, n. corn. *Eber*, n. ivory. *Thus*, n. incense. *Caput*, n. the head.—6. *Gradus*, m. a step, or degree. *Curus*, n. a horn. *Domus*, f. a house. *Manus*, f. a hand. *Ias*, f. the idea of a month. *Ficus*, f. a fig, a fig-tree. *Acus*, f. a needle. *Tribus*, f. a tribe. *Porticus*, f. a porch. *Quinqvatus*, f. a feast in honour of Minerva.—7. *Re*, f. a thing, or affair. *Meridies*, m. noon. *Die*, m. or f. a day; but pl. *die* only.



A
C O M P A N I O N
T O T H E
R U D I M E N T S.



A R T I C L E I.

Of GRAMMAR, and its PARTS.

Of LETTERS, SYLLABLES, WORDS, SENTENCES, and
POINTING.

1. **G**RAMMAR is the art of writing and speaking any language properly.
2. The parts of grammar are four; *Orthógraphy*, *Etymólogy*, *Syntax*, and *Prófody*.
3. Orthography teaches to write words with proper letters, to spell truly, and to point.
4. Etymology distinguishes the several kinds, natures, and properties of words.
5. Syntax teaches the due joining or ordering of words in sentences, by putting them in such *accidents** as are proper to express our thoughts.
6. Profody teaches a right pronounciation of words, according to *quantity* and *accent*.
7. The quantity of syllables is either *long* or *short*, from the difference of time we take in pronouncing them.—The proportion of a long syllable to a short one, is that of two to one; as, *músa*.

O F L E T T E R S.

1. **A** LETTER placed next after a vowel, is called *pure*; after a consonant, *impure*.
2. Letters invariable, in declining words, are called *radical*; variable ones, *servile*.

I

3. Capitals

* See note Introd. p. 2.

3. Capital letters begin sentences, verses, titles, proper names, and remarkable words.

4. Capitals used to express numbers, are seven; I, V, X, L, C, D, M; 1, 5, 10, 50, 100, 500, 1000; and are called *numerals*.¹

5. Capitals are also used in abbreviating proper names, and remarkable words; thus *A.* stands for, *Aulus*; *C.* *Caius*; *J.* *Caia*; *D.* *Decius*; *L.* *Lucius*; *M.* *Marcus*; *P.* *Publius*; *Q.* *Quintus*; *S.* *Sextus*; *SP.* *Spurius*; *T.* *Titus*, or *Tullius*; *H. S.* *Sestertius*; *D. D. D.* *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; *S. C.* *Senatus consultum*; *S. P. D.* *Salutem plurimam dicit*; *P. C.* *Patres conscripti*; *A. U. C.* *Ab urbe condita*; *P. R.* *Populus Romanus*; *R. P.* *Respublica*; *COSS.* *Consulibus*; *S. P. Q. R.* *Senatus populusque Romanus*. *E. G.* *Exempli Gratia*.—In other cases, small letters are mostly used.

6. *C* before *ae, oe, e, i,* and *y*, sounds soft, like *s*; but before *a, o,* and *u*, hard, like the english *k*.

7. *G* before *ae, oe, e, i,* and *y*, sounds soft, like *j*; but before *a, o,* and *u*, hard; as, *ganima*, in the greek tongue.—*Ch*, as *k*; *ph*, as *f*.

8. *Ti*, before a vowel, like *fi*; as *natio*.—Except in the beginning of a word; as, *tiara*.—or *s* precedes; as, *quaestio*.—or in the infinitive mood of verbs, to which *er* is added; as, *mittier*, for *mitti*.

OF SYLLABLES and WORDS.

1. **I**N every word there are so many syllables as there are distinct sounds; and in every syllable, one vowel.

2. A word of one syllable, is called a *monosyllable*; of two, a *disyllable*; of more, a *hyperdisyllable*, or *polysyllable*.

3. A syllable, in the beginning or middle of a word, ends in a vowel; as, *do-mi-nus*; except it be followed by *x*, as *ax-is*; or by two or more consonants; for these are to be separated, and at least one of them belongs to the preceding syllable, when the vowel of that syllable is pronounced short; as, *an-nus, tur-pis, tran-strā*.

4. A mute unites with a liquid following; as, *pa-tris*: and a liquid, or a mute, separates from a mute following; as, *al-pes, ap-tus*.

5. Two vowels meeting together, are to be parted, unless they form a diphthong; as, *co-ire*.

6. A general rule for dividing words into syllables, is this; *viz.* Words are divided in spelling, as they are naturally divided in a right pronunciation.—*Note.* Compound words are divided into their simple parts; as, *ad-eo, transf-eo*.

¹ A less numeral on the left hand of a greater, takes so much from it; but on the right, adds to it; IV, 4; VI, 6.

OF ACCENTS.

1. **A**N accent is properly a raising or depressing of the voice, in respect to the middle tone, or common pitch thereof.

2. The general rules of accenting are three: 1. In dissyllables, the former is accented; as, *púrus*: 2. In polysyllables, if the *penultima* or last syllable but one be long, it is accented; as, *impúrus*: if short, the *antepenultima* or last syllable but two is accented; as, *improbús*.

3. An accent is of three sorts; *acute*, (é) *grave*, (è) and *circumflex*, (ê).

4. An *acute* accent is used when the syllable is to be pronounced long, by reason of some additional conjunction; as, *que, ne, ve*; or some other enclitical word, as, *sis, nam, dum*; as, *itáne, adésdum*; and sometimes to distinguish the quantity of like words; as, *cecídi*, from *caedo*; to distinguish it from *cecidi*, of *cado*.

5. The *grave* accent distinguishes *adverbs*, and such like undeclined parts of speech, from casual words; as, *certè verò, amabò, &c.*

6. The *circumflex* is placed over a vowel, to shew that it is long by nature; as, *musâ, amavêrunt*; or the contraction of two vowels; as, *quís*, for *queis*; *amâsti*, for *amavisti*; *gradûs*, for *graduis*: It is also used to bring in interlined words, and then it is called a *caret*, being placed in, or below the place, where the words interlined are to come in, in reading.

7. A *diaeresis* is two points set over one vowel before another, to shew that they belong to two syllables; as, *aièrius*.

8. An *apostrophe* is a *comma* set a little above a letter, denoting the want of another letter; as, *ai'n'*, for *aisne*.

OF SPECIES and FIGURE.

1. **A**WORD, with respect to its *species*, or *kind*, is either *primitive*, when it is the original word, or first of its kind; as, *píus*, pious: or *derivative*, when it comes from another; as, *pietas*,² piety; from *píus*.

2. A word, with respect to its *figure*, is either *simple*, the parts whereof signify nothing asunder; as, *manus*, a hand; *publicus*, public: or *compound*, made of two or more significant words; as, of *res* and *publica*, is made *respublica*, a common-wealth, or state.

² Substantives of this sort, that come from adjectives, are called *Abstract qualities*.

OF SENTENCES.

1. **A SENTENCE** is either *simple*, which consists of a substantive called the subject or nominative case, and one finite³ verb expressing some motion or action of the subject, with their dependents; as, the object, the end, the circumstances of time, place, or manner, of the action; as, *Deus fundit munera die ac nocte sine intermissione*, God diffuses blessings day and night without ceasing; or

2. *Compound*, which hath more than one subject, or one finite verb, either expressed or understood; or consists of two or more simple sentences connected together by one or more relatives, or conjunctions; as, *Deus, qui gubernat mundum, puniet scelestos, qui violant ejus leges, et remunerabit bonos*, God, who governs the world, will punish the wicked, who violate his laws, and reward the good.—If there be no finite verb, it is called an imperfect sentence; as, *Laudis amor*, The passion for praise &c.

OF POINTS.

1. **A SIMPLE** sentence admits of no *point*, by which it may be divided or distinguished into parts.

2. A compound sentence, for the ease of breath, is divided into several parts or clauses, by *points* or *stops*.

3. So many *finite verbs* as there are in a sentence, expressed or understood, so many stops there ought be, and no more.

4. Points or stops are seven; a *comma*, (,) a *semicolon*, (;) a *colon*, (:) a *period*, (.) a point of *interrogation*, (?) a note of *admiration*, (!) and a *parenthesis*, ().

5. A *comma* is placed between the lesser members or clauses of a sentence, where the sense is not complete, and stops the voice while you may tell *one*.

6. A *semicolon* is twice the length of a *comma*.—It commonly expresses the division, contrariety, or opposition of things, and stops the voice while you may tell *two*, or pronounce a word of two syllables.

7. A *colon* is placed between the larger members of a sentence, when the sense is perfect, but something is added to enlarge and support it, and stops the voice while you may tell *four*.

8. A *period*, or *full point*, is used at the end of a sentence, when the sense is complete. It is a pause of the greatest length, or while you may tell *six*.⁴ and finishes the sentence, causing the next word to begin with a capital.

³ That is, a verb in the indicative, imperative, or potential mood.

⁴ This duration of the pauses is not invariable, because a discourse may be heard in a quicker or slower time.

9. An *interrogation* is of the same length with a period, and is used after a question is asked.

10. An *admiration* is also of the same length as a period, and is used to express surprize, wonder, indignation, joy, or some vehement passion.

11. A *parenthesis* is when we insert a sentence in the middle of another, so as the sense is good, when the sentence inserted is left out.

☞ These marks are sometimes met with: *section*, § *paragraph*, ¶ *asterism*, * *references*, ||† *quotations*. “ “

Obs. 1. Two nouns substantive, or two adjectives, connected by a single copulative or disjunctive, are not to be separated by a point; but when there are more than two, or where the conjunction is understood, they must be distinguished by a *comma*.

Obs. 2. Simple members or clauses connected by relatives or comparatives, are commonly distinguished by a *comma*: but when the members are short in comparative sentences; and when two members are closely connected by a relative, restraining the general sense of the antecedent, the *comma* is better omitted.

Obs. 3. When an address is made to a person, the noun which is the vocative case, is distinguished by a *comma*.

ARTICLE II.

To know the Declension of a Noun, by the Ending of the Nominative.

The R U L E.

Ist. -a. IId. -ir, -us, -um, -ster, -ander; with -us, -er, adjective.

IVth. -u, and all in -sus, -tus, -xus, proper names excepted.

Vth. -ies, with *res*, *spes*, *fides*. IIId. -ma, and all others.

EXCEPTIONS 180.

27 in -ma, of the 1st.	<i>fama</i>	reputation
	<i>flamma</i>	a flame
<i>anima, ae</i>	<i>forma</i>	form, beauty
<i>bruma</i>	<i>gemma</i>	a jewel
<i>coma</i>	<i>gluma</i>	chaff
<i>lama</i>	<i>lachryma</i>	a tear
<i>drachma</i>	<i>lama</i>	a ditch, a puddle
		<i>lima,</i>

<i>lima</i>	a file	<i>bimáter</i>	having two mothers
<i>mamma</i>	a breast or pap	<i>campester</i>	belonging to the plain
<i>norma</i>	a square, a rule	<i>celeber</i>	famous
<i>palma</i>	the palm	<i>celer, eris</i>	swift
<i>parma</i>	a buckler	<i>congener, eris</i>	of one stock
<i>pluma</i>	a feather	<i>degener, eris</i>	degenerate
<i>rima</i>	a cleft or chink	<i>equester</i>	of the horse
<i>ruma</i>	a teat	<i>pedester</i>	of the foot
<i>spuma</i>	froth, foam	<i>paluster</i>	of the fen
<i>squama</i>	a scale	<i>pauper, eris</i>	poor
<i>struma</i>	a wen, a botch	<i>puber, eris</i>	ripe of age
<i>summa</i>	the sum	<i>saluber</i>	wholesome
<i>trama</i>	the woof, yarn	<i>september</i>	September
<i>turma</i>	a troop	<i>octobar</i>	October
<i>viclima</i>	a sacrifice	<i>november</i>	November
24 in -er, of the 2d.		<i>december</i>	December
<i>ag-er, ri</i>	a field	<i>sylvester</i>	of the wood
<i>Antipater</i>	a man's name	<i>uber, eris</i>	plentiful
<i>aper</i>	a boar	<i>volucer</i>	swift, speedy
<i>arbiter</i>	a judge	1 Adjective in <i>ur</i> , of the 2d.	
<i>caper</i>	a goat	<i>satur, i</i>	full
<i>cancer</i>	a crab-fish, canker	2 Adjectives in <i>us</i> , of the 3d.	
<i>Cantaber</i>	one of Biscay	<i>intercus, utis</i>	inward
<i>coluber</i>	an adder	<i>vetus, eris</i>	old
<i>conger</i>	a conger	2 in <i>ster</i> , of the 3d.	
<i>culter</i>	a knife	<i>clyster, éris</i>	a glyster
<i>faber</i>	a smith	<i>prester</i>	a sort of serpent
<i>fiber</i>	a beaver	41 in <i>us</i> , of the 3d. and all monosyllables in <i>us</i> .	
<i>genur, eri</i>	a son-in law	<i>foedus, eris</i>	a covenant
<i>liber</i>	a book	<i>funus</i>	a funeral, death
<i>Liber, eri</i>	Bacchus	<i>genus</i>	a race, a kind
<i>Meleúger</i>	a man's name	<i>letus</i>	a side
<i>enager</i>	a wild ass	<i>munus,</i>	a gift, an office
<i>presbyter, eri</i>	an elder	<i>elus</i>	pot-herbs
<i>puer, eri</i>	a boy	<i>onus</i>	a load or burden
<i>scaber</i>	a smith's buttress	<i>opus</i>	work, labour
<i>scalper</i>	a graving tool	<i>pondus</i>	a load or weight
<i>socer, eri</i>	a father-in-law	<i>rudus</i>	rubbish
<i>Sospiter</i>	a man's name	<i>scelus</i>	wickedness, villainy
<i>Teucer</i>	a man's name	<i>silus</i>	a heavenly body
21 Adjectives in <i>er</i> , of the 3d.			<i>pluv,</i>
<i>acer, is</i>	eager, sharp		
<i>acer</i>	brisk, cheerful		

<i>ulcus</i>	a sore or ulcer
<i>vellus</i>	a fleece
<i>Venus</i>	a goddess
<i>viscus</i>	an intrail
<i>vulnus</i>	a wound

For the rest, *vid.* particular exceptions under Art. III.

15 in *us*, of the 4th.

<i>acus, is</i>	a needle
<i>anus</i>	an old woman
<i>arcus</i>	a bow
<i>cornus</i>	a cornel-tree
<i>currus</i>	a chariot, a coach
<i>gradus</i>	a step or degree
<i>idus, uum</i>	the ides of a month
<i>lacus</i>	a lake, a corn-bing
<i>manus</i>	a hand
<i>nurus</i>	a daughter-in-law
<i>porticus</i>	a porch
<i>quercus</i>	an oak
<i>sinus</i>	a bosom, a bay
<i>socrus</i>	a mother-in-law
<i>tribus</i>	a tribe, a ward

15 in *sus*, of the 2d.

<i>abyssus, i</i>	a deep pit
<i>buglossus</i>	borage
<i>byssus</i>	fine linen, lawn
<i>carbasus</i>	a sail
<i>cerasus</i>	a cherry-tree
<i>colossus</i>	a huge statue
<i>cupressus</i>	a cypress
<i>cyparissus</i>	a cypress
<i>cytissus</i>	hather
<i>fusus</i>	a spindle
<i>grossus</i>	a green fig
<i>nasus</i>	the nose

<i>nifus</i>	a sparrow-hawk
<i>sponsus</i>	a bridegroom
<i>ursus</i>	a bear

25 in *tus*, of the 2d.

<i>advocatus, i</i>	a lawyer
<i>amarantus</i>	a sort of flower
<i>amethystus</i>	an amethyst
<i>arbutus</i>	the strawberry-tree
<i>architectus</i>	an architect
<i>barbitus</i>	a lute
<i>bolëtus</i>	a mushroom
<i>cestus</i>	a marriage-girdle
<i>cetus</i>	a whale
<i>contus</i>	a pole
<i>coritus</i>	a quiver
<i>cubitus</i>	an elbow
<i>digitus</i>	a finger
<i>elephantus</i>	an elephant
<i>grabatus</i>	a couch, a hammock
<i>hortus</i>	a garden
<i>lectus</i>	a bed
<i>legatus</i>	an embassador
<i>maritus</i>	a husband
<i>myrtus</i>	a myrtle
<i>notus</i>	the south-wind
<i>parasitus</i>	a flatterer
<i>pontus</i>	the sea
<i>punctus</i>	a point
<i>ventus</i>	the wind

2 in *xus*, of the 2d.

<i>buxus, i</i>	the box-tree
<i>taxus</i>	the yew-tree

4 in *ies*, of the 3d.

See particular exceptions, A. III.

ARTICLE III.

To know the Genitive of the third Declension.

The RULE.

A atis. E is. Do dinis. Go ginis. O makes ónis. Men minis. L, N, R, add is; but En inis, of cano: ontis Oon, Phon, Medon, Leon, Ixon. Ter, latin, makes tris; Ber, bris; Cer, cris; Bs, bis; Ps, pis. Eps, not monosyllable, ipis; but Eps, ipitis, from caput. Safter N, R, tis; iens, euntis, of eo; Cors from cor, makes cordis. As, atis. Es, is.^s Is, is. Os, óris. Us, eris; but Us, monosyll. úris. Us, comparative, óris. Put, pitis. X, cis: ex, not monosyll. icis.

LOWE.

EXAMPLES.

P OEM-A, atis	a poem	Piet-as, atis	piety
Mar-e, is	the sea	Ple-bs, bis	the commonalty
Sa-l, lis	salt	Sud-es, is	a stake
Sple-n, nis	the milt	Cass-is, is	a net
Fla-men, minis	a priest	Fro-ns, tis	the forehead
Carb-o, ónis	a coal	Lab-os, óris	labour
Car-do, dinis	a hinge	Sti-ps, pis	alms, pay
Vir-go, ginis	a virgin	Forc-eps, ipis	tongs
La-r, ris	a house-god	Bic-eps, ipitis	two-headed
Accipi-ter, tris	a hawk	Pa-rs, rtis	a part
Tubic-en, inis	a trumpeter	Red-iens, euntis	returning
Laoco-on, ontis	a man's name	Con-cors, cordis	of one mind
Xeno-phon, ontis	a man's name	Mun-us, eris	a gift
Lao-medon, ontis	a man's name	Ca-put, pitis	the head
Timo-leon, ontis	a man's name	Fa-x, cis	a torch
Hor-izon, ontis	the horizon	Min-us, óris	less
Salu-ber, bris	wholesome	Pl-us, uris	more
Ala-cer, cris	cheerful	Jud-ex, icis	a judge

^s These proper names, *Chremes, Dares, Eutyches, Laches, Thales*, and some others, have both *is* and *eris* in the genitive. *Voss. Rudim.*

¶ GREEK *haec As adis*:⁶ *hic Asantis*:⁷ *Is* makes *idis* or *idos*.⁸
Some both *is* and *idis*.⁹ *Sis* and *polis*, *is* or *os* pure.¹⁰ *Xs*, *vos*.¹¹
I itis, of *-meli* compounds.¹² *Ix igis*, some foreign names.¹³

Particular EXCEPTIONS.

Abi-es, etis	<i>a fir-tree</i>	culp-is, idis	<i>a point</i>
ae-s, ris	<i>copper : money</i>	cust-os; ódis	<i>a keeper</i>
al-es, itis	<i>a bird</i>	Dec-us, oris	<i>glory</i>
ambie-ns, ntis	<i>compassing</i>	dedec-us, oris	<i>disgrace</i>
am-es, itis	<i>a net-slick</i>	def-es, idis	<i>slothful</i>
anc-eps, ipitis	<i>doubtful</i>	d-is, itis	<i>Pluto: rich</i>
antist-es, itis	<i>a prelate</i>	div-es, itis	<i>rich</i>
ari-es, etis	<i>a ram</i>	d-os, otis	<i>a portion</i>
arb-os, oris	<i>a tree</i>	E-bur, oris	<i>ivory</i>
as, fis	<i>a pound, any whole</i>	e-do, donis	<i>a glutton</i>
auc-eps, upis	<i>a fowler</i>	equ-es, itis	<i>a horseman</i>
Be-s, fis	<i>eight ounces</i>	Facin-us, oris	<i>a fact</i>
b-os, ovis	<i>an ox, bull, cow</i>	fa-r, ris	<i>corn</i>
Caesp-es, itis	<i>a turf</i>	fe-l, llis	<i>the gall</i>
car-o, nis	<i>flesh</i>	fem-ur, oris	<i>the thigh</i>
cast-is, idis	<i>a helmet</i>	foen-us, oris	<i>usury</i>
cin-is, eris	<i>ashes</i>	fom-es, itis	<i>fuel</i>
cocl-es, itis	<i>one-ey'd</i>	fr-aus, audis	<i>deceit</i>
coel-ebis, ibis	<i>a batchelor</i>	frig-us, oris	<i>cold</i>
com-es, itis	<i>a companion</i>	fro-ns, ndis	<i>a leaf</i>
comp-os, otis	<i>possess'd of</i>	fru-x, gis	<i>fruit</i>
conju-x, gis	<i>a yoke-fellow</i>	Gla-ns, ndis	<i>an acorn</i>
co r, rdis	<i>the heart</i>	gl-is, iris	<i>a dormouse</i>
corp-us, oris	<i>the body</i>	glut-en, inis	<i>glue</i>
c-os, otis	<i>a whetstone</i>	gre-x, gis	<i>a flock</i>
cucum-is, eris	<i>a cucumber</i>	gr-us, uis	<i>a crane</i>

⁶ *lampas, psecas, trias, chillas, Dryas, Pallas.*

⁷ *gigas, elephas, adamas, Pallas* a man's name, &c.

⁸ *Iaspis, acanthis, aegis, apsis, aspis, bolis, coronis, chloris, diplois, hybris, iris, paropsis, periscelis, pleuritis, proboscis, promulsis, pyramis, pyxis, tyrannis*, and many proper names; as, *Amaryllis, Daphnis, Thetis*, &c. also patronymics, poems, and gentiles.

⁹ *Adonis, Ibis, Iris, Isis, Moeotis, Osiris, Phalaris, Serapis, Themis, Tybris.*

¹⁰ *Quae graecè per os purum declinantur, latinè tum sunt parisyllabica, tum per eos vel ios genitivum retinent; ut genesis, is, eos vel ios: sic haeresis, metropolis, &c.*

¹¹ *Capys, Typhis, Tethys, Chelys.*

¹² *hydromeli, oxymeli.* Plin.

¹³ *Ambiorix, Dumnorix, Caes.*

gry-ps, phis
 gurg-es, itis
 Haer-es, edis
 heb-es, etis
 hepa-r, tis
 her-es, óis
 hye-ms, mis
 hom-o, inis
 hosp-es, itis
 Im-ber, bris
 imp-os, otis
 inc-us, údis
 interpr-es, etis
 it-er, ineris
 Jec-ur, oris
 jugla-ns, ndis
 juvent-us, útis
 La-c, ctis
 lap-is, idis
 la-ter, teris
 l-aus, audis
 leb-es, étis
 le-ns, ndis
 lep-us, oris
 le-x, gis
 li-go, gónis
 lim-es, itis
 l-is, itis
 lit-us, oris
 locupl-es, étis
 Magn-es, étis
 manu-es, étis
 m-as, aris
 ma-ter, tris
 me-l, llis
 merc-es, édis
 mil-es, itis
 Nem-o, inis
 nem-us, oris
 nep-os, ótis
 ni-x, vis
 no-x, ctis
 Obf-es, idis
 os, offis

a griffon
a gulph
an heir
dull
the liver
a hero
winter
a man
a guest
a shower
unable
an anvil
an -eter
a journey
the liver
a walnut
youth
milk
a stone
a brick
praise
a caldron
a nit
a hare
a law
a spade
a boundary
strife
a shore
wealthy
a loadstone
mild
a male
a mother
honey
a reward
a soldier
nobody
a grove
a grandson
snow
night
a hostage
a bone

Palm-es, itis
 pal-us, údis
 pari-es, etis
 pa-ter, tris
 pect-en, inis
 pect-us, oris
 pec-us, oris
 pec-us, udis
 ped-es, itis
 pen-us, oris
 p-es, edis
 pign-us, oris
 popl-es, itis
 praep-es, etis
 pra-es, edis
 praef-es, idis
 pub-es, eris
 pul-s, tis
 pulv-is, eris
 Qui-es, étis
 Rem-ex, igis
 re-x, gis
 rob-ur, oris
 Sacerd-os, ótis
 fal-us, útis
 fangu-is, inis
 fatell-es, itis
 seg-es, etis
 sem-is, issis
 senect-us, útis
 sen-ex, is
 fervit-us, útis
 sosp-es, itis
 sterc-us, oris
 stip-es, itis
 supell-ex, ectilis
 superst-es, itis
 f-us, uis
 Tap-es, étis
 teg-es, etis
 tell-us, úris
 temp-us, oris
 ter-es, etis
 terg-us, oris

a vine-branch
a marsh
a wall
a father
a comb
the breast
large cattle
small cattle
one on foot
viſuals
a foot
a pledge
the ham
swift-wing'd
a surety
a governor
ripe of age
hasty pudding
dust
rest
a rower
a king
strength
a priest
health
blood
an attendant
a crop of corn
half a pound
old age
old
slavery
safe
dung
a stake
goods
out-living
a swine
tapestry
a mat
the earth
time
round
a hide
term-es, itis

term-es, itis	a bough with fruit	v-as, asis	a vessel
tram-es, itis	a path	vel-es, itis	light arm'd
tud-es, itis	a mallet	verv-ex, écis	a wether
turb-o, inis	a whirlwind	v-is, ires pl.	strength
V-as, adis	a surety	vom-is, eris	a plowshare
		<i>virt-us, útis</i>	<i>virtue,</i>

ARTICLE IV.

General Observations on the five Declensions of Nouns.

Obs. 1. **I**N Latin a noun is declined by varying its ending, instead of which in English some little particle is prefixed to each Case: These are called signs of cases. See the examples to the declension in the Introduction.

2. The *vocative* is always the same with the *nominative*, except in the second declension.

3. The *dat.* and *abl.* cases plural end alike in every declension.

4. The *nom. acc.* and *voc.* cases plural of the three last declensions end alike.

5. The *gen.* and *dat.* sing. of the first and fifth are similar.

6. The *dat.* and *abl.* sing. of the second are similar; and so are the *dat.* and *abl.* plural of the first and second.

7. The three last declensions have usually but three endings in the plural.

8. The *nom. acc.* and *voc.* of all neuters are similar.

Nouns Substantives and Adjectives to be declined together through all the Cases in both Numbers.

I.		III.	
Penna bona,	a good pen	Lapis rotundus,	a round stone
Penna melior,	a better pen	Flumen placidum,	a gentle stream
Musa tristis,	a mournful song	Rete rarum,	a fine net
Forma fugax,	fading beauty	Ales ingens,	a great bird
Poëta optimus,	the best poet	Sermo elegans,	an elegant speech
II.		Virtus admiranda,	an admirable
Magister eruditus,	a learned master		(virtue
Puer audax,	a bold boy	Sedes commoda,	a convenient seat
Dominus asper,	a cruel lord	Calcar acre,	a sharp spur
Filius meus,	my son	Pecten buxeus,	a box comb
Regnum majus,	a greater kingdom	Aequor placidum,	a calm sea
			Tempus

Tempus pretiósūm, <i>precious time</i>	Fructus dulcis, <i>sweet fruit</i>
Mulier pulchra, <i>a pretty woman</i>	Passus celer, <i>a swift pace</i>
Auceps perítus, <i>a skilful fowler</i>	Genu flexum, <i>a bended knee</i>
Pes sinister, <i>the left foot</i>	V.
IV.	Facies illóta, <i>a dirty face</i>
Gradus certus, <i>a sure step</i>	Dies festus, <i>a holy day</i>
Manus dextra, <i>the right hand</i>	Res nocens, <i>a hurtful thing</i>

ARTICLE V.

The Special Rules for knowing the Gender of Nouns by their Termination, adapted to the five Declensions.

- I. *Haec musa* ¹⁴ *atque ode*; *sed in as, es* ¹⁵ *mascula dicas.*
- II. *Hic liber, annus*; *in os* ¹⁶ *vel in eus* ¹⁷: *Hoc harbiton, ovum.*
- III. { *Hic paeon, delphinque, canon, leo, carcer, amor, mos.*
Haec nix, mens ¹⁸, *nubes, pietas, laus, turris* ¹⁹, *ioque* ²⁰.
Hoc lac, thus, mare, far, mel, ebur, caput, en ²¹ *que pöema.*
- IV. *Hic gradus; hoc cornu*: *tamen haec domus et manus, idus.*
Ficus, acusque, tribus; sic porticus et quinquátrus.
- V. *Haec res; meridies* ²² *mas est; et utrumque dies* ²³ *est.*

Except in the first Declension five in *a* masculine.

Adria, pandectae, rhectaeque, cométa, planéta.

Except in the second Declension.

Haec humus, antidotus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,
Lecythus atque, cos, vannus, pharus, atque papyrus,
Nardus, -metrus ²⁴, *-odus* ²⁵, *dialectus, ciémus et arctus.*
Hoc virus, pelagus; neutrum modo, mas modo vulgus.

14. i. e. Nouns of the first declension ending in *a*, as *musa*; or in *e*, as *ode*, are feminine: so the rest of the words in all the five rules, whose terminations are distinguished by Roman letters, must be understood to be a rule for the gender of all other nouns with like endings.—15. *as*, *tiaras*, *cometes*.—16. *as*, *logos*; but *hoc chaos*, *epos*, *melos*.—17. *as* *haleus*, *clypeus*.—18. So all words that end in *s* impure.—19. So Greek words ending in *ys*; as, *chlamys*, *chelys*.—20. Verbals, as *lectio* from *lego*; also *ditio*, *communio*, *portio*, *tatio*, *perduellio*, *rebellio*, derived from nouns.—21. As *omen*, *gluten*.—22. An amphibrach foot, instead of a dactyl.—23. Pl. *hi dies*.—24. *diametrus*, *perimétrus*.—25. *exodus*, *periodus*, *methodus*, *synodus*.

Except

Except in the third Declension.

I. Masculines with feminine endings.

Mascula in es ²⁶ *crescentia, non monosyllaba in -ax, ex* ²⁷.

OBS. *Dic tamen Haec merces, compes, requiesque, quiesque, Et teges atque seges; fornax, forfexque, supellex* ²⁸.

Hic as (antis): oryx, spadix cum fornice, coccyx,

Atque calix, esox, volvox, urpixque dioryx;

Mons, pons, fons, oriensque, merops, gryps, vas (vadis) hydrops,

Torrens, nefrendisque, chalybs, et acinace, cossis.

As ²⁹ *cum compositis in is omnibus; ut centussis;*

Sic pars assis in -ans, vel in -ens, vel in -unx, itidem dens ³⁰.

Mas, coles, vepres; natalis, aqualis et orbis,

Callis ³¹, *caulis, follis, collis, mensis et ensis,*

Fustis, funis, cenchris, panis, crinis et ignis,

Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis et unguis,

Glis, vermis, vectis, postis, simul axis et antes.

Mugilis et cucumis, lapis, et cum sanguine, vomis.

Masculines with neuter endings 13.

Sol, falar, attagen et lichen, ren, splenque, lienque,

Mus, lepus, ac pecten, fursur cum turture, vultur.

Feminines with masculine or neuter endings.

Feminea -udis et -utis; Hyperdissyllaba -do, -go,

Haec grando, findon, sic halcyon, icon, ædon,

Arbor, cos, caro, dos, echo, tellusque, lagopus,

Obs. Haec tria sed maribus tripus, hárpago, et únedo jungas.

Neuters with masculine or feminine endings.

Neutra cadaver, iter, cor et acquor, marmor, adorque,

Gingiber et laser, cicer, aces, piper, osque papaver,

Suber, acer, tuber, ver, vas, spinther, filer, uber,

Atque laver, verber; sic gracula in -as (-atis) -es (is).

Doubtfuls sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

Sunt dubia haec finis, serobs, serpens, bubo, rudens, grus,

Alvus, lens, atomus; sic carbasus, adde cupidus,

26. Fomes, (fomitis).—27. thorax, vertex.—28. Add halex.—29. The as contains 12 ounces, sextans 2, quadrans 3, triens 4, quincunx 5, semis or semillis 6, septunx 7, bes 8, dodrans 9, decunx or dextans 10, decunx 11.—30. as bidens, tridens, signifying instruments.—31. The Masculines above distinguished by Italics, are sometimes, though but rarely, found in the feminine gender.

Cardo, margo, cinis; *sic talpa et dama, canális,*
Et cytífus, balanus, grossus, colus, atque phasélus,
 Pampinus *et corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis,*
 Barbitus, *atque rubus, frons, ales, amáracus, arcus,*
 Pulvis, adeps, forceps, clunis, pedis, amne, *palumbes,*
 Phoenix, *lux, sandyx, imbrex, cum pumice, cortex,*
 Grex, varix, hystrix, *et onyx cum prole, filexque,*
Perdix, lynx, limax, stirps (pro trunco) pedis et calx,
Atque natrix, tradux, et obex, quibus addito cimex.

Varying their gender with their declension or signification.

Hoc ac-us, eris *chaff*; Haec ac-us, ūs *chaff*; *a needle.*
 Hic bomby-x, cis *a silk-worm*; Hic haec *silk.*
 Haec calx *chalk, lime*; Hic haec *heel, goal, end.*
 Hoc penus, penum, *viñuals*; Hic pen-us, i; Haec pen-us, ūs.
 Hic haec stirps *a root, stalk*; Haec *a race, offspring.*
 Hic sal wit, jokes, *raillery*; Hic hoc salt; Hoc sal the sea.
 Hoc specus *a den, Aptote*; Hic haec spec-us, specūs.

Note. The words printed in Italics among the Doubtfuls are used mostly in the feminine gender by classic writers; the rest are more frequently masculine, except a few, for which the Authorities are nearly equal.

☞ The gender of nouns wanting the singular number is found by supposing a nominative singular, such as the Analogy of words requires, and examining the termination by the special rules above: so nouns in (i) wanting the singular are masculine; nouns in (ac) are feminine, in (a) neuter: *Precis* is feminine (because *prox* must have been its nominative if ever it had one) by the rule in the third declension as, *es, is, ans, x, &c.* There are some greek nouns ending in (e) in the plural number; as, *cete, mele, Tempe.*

ARTICLE VI.

Latin words in the Exceptions englished.

1. Adria	<i>the Adriatic sea</i>	diphthongus	<i>a diphthong</i>
pandectae	<i>a body of laws</i>	byssus	<i>fine flax</i>
rhetæ	<i>earthquakes</i>	abyssus	<i>a gulph, deep pit</i>
cometa	<i>a comet</i>	Lecythus	<i>an oil cruise</i>
planeta	<i>a planet</i>	eos	<i>the morning</i>
2. Humus	<i>the ground</i>	vannus	<i>a fan</i>
antidotus	<i>a preservative against</i>	pharus	<i>a watch-tower</i>
	<i>(poison)</i>	papyrus	<i>paper</i>
			Nardus

Nardus	<i>spikenard</i>	vas (vadis)	<i>a surety</i>
-metrus	<i>a measure</i>	hydrops	<i>the dropsy</i>
-odus	<i>a way</i>	Torrens	<i>a land-flood</i>
dialectus	<i>a dialect</i>	nefrendis	<i>a pig newly weaned</i>
eremus	<i>the wilderness</i>	chalybs	<i>steel</i>
arctus	<i>a set of stars call'd the bear</i>	acinace	<i>a scymeter</i>
Virus	<i>poison</i>	coffis	<i>a wood-worm</i>
pelagus	<i>the sea</i>	As	<i>a pound any whole</i>
vulgus	<i>the mob</i>	cum omnibus	<i>with all</i>
neutr-um,	<i>is neuter</i>	compositis	<i>its compounds</i>
modo	<i>sometimes</i>	in is	<i>ending in is</i>
mas	<i>masculine</i>	centussis	<i>a hundred asses</i>
3. Mascula	<i>masculine</i>	Sic pars	<i>so part</i>
in es	<i>ending in es</i>	assis	<i>of an as or pound</i>
crescentia	<i>increasing</i>	in -ans	<i>ending in ans</i>
Non monosyllaba	<i>of more than one</i>	vel in -ens	<i>or in ens</i>
	<i>(syllable)</i>	vel in -unx	<i>or in unx</i>
in ax, ex	<i>ending in ax or ex</i>	itidem	<i>likewise</i>
Dic tamen	<i>but say</i>	dens	<i>a tooth</i>
haec merces	<i>a reward</i>	Mas	<i>masculine</i>
compes	<i>fetters</i>	coles	<i>a bean-stalk, colewort</i>
requies }	<i>rest</i>	vepres	<i>a briar, a bramble</i>
quies }		natalis	<i>one's birth-day</i>
teges	<i>a mat</i>	aqualis	<i>an ewer, water-pot</i>
seges	<i>a crop, land tilled</i>	orbis	<i>any round thing</i>
fornax	<i>a furnace, a kiln</i>	Callis	<i>a path</i>
forfex	<i>sheers</i>	caulis	<i>a stalk</i>
supellex	<i>goods, furniture</i>	follis	<i>bellows</i>
Hic as (antis)	<i>in the genitive</i>	collis	<i>a hill</i>
oryx	<i>a wild goat</i>	mensis	<i>a month</i>
spadix	<i>a branch of a date tree</i>	ensis	<i>a sword</i>
fornix	<i>an arch, a vault</i>	Fustis	<i>a club</i>
coccyx	<i>a cuckow</i>	funis	<i>a rope</i>
calix	<i>a cup, a chalice</i>	cenchr-is (is)	<i>a kind of serpent</i>
efox	<i>a great fish</i>	cenchr-is (idis)	<i>a kind of hawk</i>
volvox	<i>a vine-fretter</i>	panis	<i>bread</i>
urpax	<i>a harrow</i>	crinis	<i>hair</i>
dioryx	<i>a ditch</i>	ignis	<i>fire</i>
Mons	<i>a mountain</i>	Cassis	<i>a toil, a net</i>
pons	<i>a bridge</i>	fascis	<i>a bunch of rods, a faggot</i>
fons	<i>a fountain</i>	torris	<i>a fire-brand</i>
oriens	<i>the east</i>	sentis	<i>a thorn</i>
merops	<i>a bird that eats bees</i>	piscis	<i>a fish</i>
gryps	<i>a griffon</i>	unguis	<i>a man's nail</i>
			<i>Glis</i>

Glis	<i>a dormouse</i>	Sed jungas	<i>but join</i>
vermis	<i>a worm</i>	maribus	<i>to the masculines</i>
vectis	<i>a lever, or iron crow</i>	tripus	<i>a three-footed stool</i>
postis	<i>a door-post</i>	harpago	<i>a grappling hook</i>
timul	<i>likewise</i>	unedo	<i>a four fruit</i>
axis	<i>an axle-tree</i>	Neutra	<i>neuters</i>
antes, ium	<i>the fore ranks of vines</i>	cadaver	<i>a carcase</i>
Mugilis	<i>a mullet</i>	iter	<i>a journey</i>
cucumis	<i>a cucumber</i>	cor	<i>the heart</i>
lapis	<i>a stone</i>	aequor	<i>a smooth surface</i>
fanguis	<i>blood</i>	marmor	<i>marble</i>
vomis and -er	<i>a plowshare</i>	ador	<i>pure wheat</i>
Sol	<i>the sun</i>	Gingiber	<i>ginger</i>
falar	<i>a young salmon, a trout</i>	laser	<i>the herb benjamin</i>
attagen	<i>a snipe</i>	cicer	<i>a vetch</i>
lichen	<i>a tetter, ring-worm</i>	aes	<i>copper, brass</i>
ren	<i>the kidney</i>	piper	<i>pepper</i>
splen	<i>the spleen, the milt</i>	os (oris)	<i>the mouth</i>
lien	<i>the spleen</i>	os (offis)	<i>a bone</i>
lienis		papaver	<i>a poppy</i>
Mus	<i>a mouse</i>	Suber	<i>a cork tree</i>
Iepus	<i>a hare</i>	acer	<i>a maple tree</i>
pecten	<i>a comb</i>	tuber {	<i>a mushroom, knob, wen n.</i>
furfur	<i>bran</i>		<i>the tuber tree f.</i>
turtur	<i>a turtle</i>		<i>the fruit of it m.</i>
vultur	<i>a vulture</i>	ver	<i>the spring time</i>
Feminea	<i>feminine</i>	vas (vafis)	<i>a vessel</i>
-udis & -utis	<i>making -udis or -utis</i>	spinther	<i>a buckle, a clasp</i>
	<i>(in the gen.)</i>	tiler	<i>an osier, a small withy</i>
Hyperdisyllaba	<i>of more than two</i>	uber	<i>a dug, a teat</i>
	<i>(syllables)</i>	Laver	<i>water parsley</i>
-do, -go	<i>ending in -do or -go</i>	verber	<i>a stripe</i>
Grando	<i>hail</i>	fic graecis	<i>so in greek words</i>
findon	<i>fine linen</i>	-as (atis), -es (is)	
halcyon	<i>a sort of bird, a king's fisher</i>	Sunt dubia haec	<i>these are doubtful</i>
icon	<i>an image</i>	finis	<i>an end</i>
ædon	<i>a nightingale</i>	scrobs	<i>a ditch</i>
Arbor	<i>a tree</i>	serpens	<i>a serpent</i>
cos	<i>a whetstone</i>	bubo	<i>an owl</i>
caro	<i>flesh</i>	rudens	<i>a cable</i>
dos	<i>a portion</i>	grus	<i>a crane</i>
echo	<i>the rebounding of a voice</i>	Alvus	<i>a paunch</i>
tellus	<i>the earth</i>	lens (dis)	<i>a net</i>
lagopus	<i>a dainty bird about the Alps</i>	lens (tis)	<i>lentils, a kind of pulse</i>
			<i>atomus</i>

átomus	an atom, mote in the sun	pedis	a louse
carbāsus	a sail	amnis	a river
cupído	a desire	palumbes	a ring-dove
Cardo	a hinge	Phoenix	a phenix
margo	the brink or brim	lux	light
cinis	ashes	sandyx	a purple colour
talpa	a mole	imbrex	a gutter-tile
dama	a deer	pumex	a pumice stone
canális	a channel, a water-pipe	cortex	a bark, a shell
Cytifus	bather	Grex	a flock
bálanus	the fruit of the palm tree	varix	a swollen vein
grossus	a green fig	hystrix	a porcupine
colus	a distaff	onyx	a precious stone
phasélus	a pinnacle	cum prole	with its compounds
Pámpinus	a tendrel of a vine	filex	a flint
corbis	a basket	Perdix	a partridge
linter	a bark, a small boat	lynx	a beast called an ounce
torques and } torquis }	a collar, a chain	limax	a snail
specus	a cave	stirps (pro trunco)	the body of a tree
anguis	a snake	calx pedis	the heel of the foot
Barbitus	a harp; dulcimer	Natrix	a water-serpent
rubus	a bush, a bramble	tradux	a graff, an off-set of a vine
frons (dis)	a leaf	obex	a bolt, a bar
frons (tis)	the forehead	quibus addito	to which add
ales	any great bird	cimex	a bug, a wood-louse
amaracus	marjoram	Sal	salt, the sea
arcus	a bow	sexus ūs m. }	a sex
Pulvis	dust	sexus i n. }	
adeps	grease, fat	cancer	a crab: canker
forceps	a pair of tongs	calor	heat
clunis	the buttock	fiser	a parsnip
		uter	a bottle

ARTICLE VII.

III. NUMERALS, or words that express number, are;

I. CARDINALS or chief numbers answering to Quot? *How many?*

Unus 1,³² duo 2, tres 3,³³ quatuor 4, quinque 5, sex 6, septem 7, octo 8, novem 9, decem 10, undecim 11, duodecim 12, trédecim

³² Unus is used in the plural number when joined to a plural signifying one thing;
³³ Tres wants the singular number; in the plural it is declined like tristis.

13, quatuordecim 14, quindecim 15, sexdecim (or sedecim) 16, septemdecim 17, octodecim 18, novemdecim (or undeviginti) 19, Viginti 20, triginta 30, quadraginta 40, quinquaginta 50, sexaginta 60, septuaginta 70, octoginta 80, nonaginta 90, Centum 100, ducenti 200, trecenti 300, quadringenti 400, quingenti 500, sexcenti 600, septingenti 700, octingenti 800, nongenti 900, Mille³⁴ 1000, duo millia (or bis mille) 2000, &c.

2. ORDINALS. Quotus? Which in order?

Primus the first, secundus the second, tertius the third, quartus the fourth, quintus 5, sextus 6, septimus 7, octavus 8, nonus 9, Decimus 10, undecimus 11, duodecimus 12, decimus tertius 13, &c. Vigésimus (or vicesimus) 20, trigésimus (or tricesimus) 30, quadragésimus 40, &c.

3. DISTRIBUTIVES. Quoténi, How many each?

Singuli one of each, bini two and two, terni (or trini) by threes, quaterni four a piece, quini 5, seni 6, septéni 7, octóni 8, novéni 9, Deni 10, undéni 11, duodéni 12, ternidéni 13, &c. Vicéni 20, tricéni 30, quadragéni 40, &c. Centéni 100, ducenténi 200, trecenténi (or trecenténi) 300, quadringéni 400, &c.

4. TEMPORALS. Quoties? How often?

Semel once, bis twice, ter thrice, quater four times, quinquies 5, sexies 6, septies 7, octies 8, novies 9, Decies 10, undecies 11, duodecies 12, tredecies 13, &c. Vicies 20, tricies 30, quadrágies 40, &c. Centies 100, Millies 1000, bis millies 2000, &c.

5. MULTIPLICATIVES. Quotuplex? How many fold?

Simplex single, duplex double, triplex three fold, quadruplex 4, quincuplex (or quintuplex) 5, sextuplex 6, septemplex 7, octuplex 8, novemplex 9, Decemplex 10, Vigécuplex 20, trigécuplex 30, &c. Centuplex 100, Millecuplex 1000, &c.—Sesquialter one and a half, sesquitercius one and a third more, sesquipleus half as much again, sesquiplus as much and half as much.

6. PROPORTIONALS. Quotuplus? How much bigger?

Duplus twice as much, triplus three times as much, quadruplus 4, quincuplus 5, sextuplus 6, septuplus 7, octuplus 8, Decuplus 10, Vigécuplus 20, trigécuplus 30, &c.

7. QUOTANUS? Of what regiment or class?

Primánus of the first legion or class, secundanus of the second, tertianus of the third, quartanus of the fourth, quinquanus of the fifth, &c.

³⁴ The adjective *mille* is undeclined in the singular number, and so is the substantive *mille*, but *milli* in the ablat. Pl. *millia*, *ium*, *ibus*, &c. When joined to a substantive it is an adjective.

8. QUOTENNIS? *Of what age?*

Biennis (or bimus) *two years old*, trimus 3, quadriennis (or quadrimus) 4, quinquennis 5, sexennis 6, septennis 7, octennis 8, novennis 9, decennis 10, duodecennis 12, sedecennis 16, Vicennis 20, &c.

Rules for placing Numerals.

- I. Without *et* place first always the biggest number.³⁵
 - II. With *et*, under a hundred, place first mostly the less.³⁶
- Above a hundred place first almost always the bigger.³⁷

Encreasing.

- (1) Numeral adjectives are encreased only by adverbs.³⁸
- (2) *Millia* a substantive by cardinal or distributive adjectives.³⁹

Diminishing.

Unde- *one*, Duode- *two*, short : from 20 to 100.⁴⁰

35 *As nonaginta septem. Plin. septingentesimo sexagesimo quinto. Cic.*

36 *Septem et quinquaginta. Plin. uno et octogesimo. Cic. also decem et tres. Cic.*

37 *Centum et septem. Cic. centesima et altera. Cic.*

38 *Ter centum. Virg. tercenteni. Mart.*

39 *Centum millia, or centena millia. Rhen.*

40 *Undetriginta. Vitruv. undecentum. Plin. undecentesimus. Val. Max.*

Note. Cardinals are sometimes put for Ordinals, Plato, uno octogesimo anno scribens. Cic. Ordinal for Cardinal, sexta cervice feratur. Juven. Distributive for Cardinal, bis denis navibus ibant. Virg. Partitive for Cardinal, unus et alter. Cic. Partitive for Ordinal, altero et vigesimo die. Cic.

ARTICLE VIII.

Incompārables⁴¹ are,

1. **A**DJECTIVES whose signification cannot be increased or diminished ; as, *omnis* all, *nullus* none.
2. Diminutives ; as, *feroculus* somewhat fierce ; *subtristis* a little sad.
3. Gentiles ; as, *Romānus* Roman ; *Anglus* English.
4. Materials ; as, *ahenus*, brazen ; *hordeaceus* made of barley.
5. Possessives ; as, *humānus* belonging to man ; *muliēbris* womanish.

41 That is, whose sense is invariable, and cannot be more or less than what it is, without destroying its notion ; as, *primus* the first ; we cannot suppose three firsts, for that which is first, must be before any other.

6. Numerals; as, *unus* one, *primus* the first.

7. Participials in *dus*; as, *verendus* to be feared.

8. Ending in *bundus*; as, *ludibundus* playful; in *icus*,⁴² as *modicus*; in *imus*, as *legitimus*; in *inus*, as *matutinus*; in *ivus*, as *aestivus*; in *orus*, as *canorus*; in *plex*, as *duplex* (except *simplex*); in *us* pure, as *idoneus*; in *bilis*, as *nubilis*; and compounds, whose simples are incomparable, as *inhumanus*, &c.

9. Compounded of two nouns; as, *multiformis* of many shapes; of a noun and a verb, as *particeps*, *lucifugus*; with *per* and *prae*, as *permagnus*, *praedives*.

EXCEPT.

Possessives.		
capitalis, ior —	belonging to the head	amic-us, ior, issimus friendly
civilis, ior —	civil	apric-us, ior, issimus sunny
frugalis, ior —	belonging to corn, (thrifty)	rustic-us, ior — plain, simple
juvenilis, ior —	youthful	mirific-us — entissimus marvel- issimus (lous
popularis, ior —	belonging to the (people)	-imus.
liberalis, ior, issimus, belonging to (freedom)		opim-us, ior — rich, fertile
regalis, ior — princely		-inus.
salutaris, ior — wholesome		divin-us, ior — divine
fervilis, ior — slavish		supin-us, ior — negligent
fylvester, ior — woody, wild		vicin-us, ior — near
vocalis, ior issimus noisy		-ivus.
humanus, ior, issimus humane		festiv-us, ior, issimus merry
urbanus, ior, issimus of the city		lasciv-us, ior, issimus wanton
Participials in -dus.		tempestiv-us, ior — seasonable
infand-us — issimus unspeakable		intempestiv-us, ior — unseasonable
nefand-us — issimus not fit to be (named)		-us pure.
-bundus.		arduus, ior, issimus lofty
treme-bundus, ior — fearful		assiduus, ior, issimus constant
-icus.		egregius, ior — excellent
pudic-us, ior, issimus modest		exiguus, ior, issimus small
		industrius, ior — industrious
		noxius, ior — hurtful

⁴² With the penultima short.

Note. Most adjectives of incomparable endings may have their force increased by proper particles, as *magis*, *perquam*, *admodum*, *plurimum valde*, *maxime*; as *magis admodum*, *maxime verendus*, *plurimum colendus*; we even add a particle sometimes to a regular superlative to raise its emphasis, as *ammius longus* &c.

innoxius, ior —	<i>harmless</i>	mirabilis 3	<i>wonderful</i>
pius — { <i>issimus</i>	<i>pious</i>	miserabilis, ior —	<i>miserable</i>
{ <i>ientissimus</i> }		mobilis 3	<i>moveable</i>
strenuus, ior, <i>issimus</i>	<i>stout</i>	mutabilis, ior —	<i>changeable</i>
vacuus — <i>issimus</i>	<i>at liberty</i>	Nobilis 3	<i>noble</i>
-bilis.		notabilis, ior —	<i>remarkable</i>
admirabilis, ior —	<i>wonderful</i>	Optabilis, ior —	<i>desirable</i>
aequabilis, ior —	<i>equitable</i>	Penetrabilis, ior —	<i>piercing</i>
affabilis, ior —	<i>affable</i>	placabilis, ior —	<i>easy to be appeased</i>
alibilis, ior —	<i>nourishing</i>	probabilis, ior —	<i>likely</i>
amabilis, ior, <i>issimus</i>	<i>lovely</i>	Sanabilis, ior —	<i>curable</i>
amabiliter, ius, <i>issime</i>	<i>friendly</i>	stabilis 3	<i>durable</i>
aspectabilis, ior —	<i>worthy to be look'd</i>	Terribilis, ior —	<i>terrible</i>
<i>(upon</i>		tolerabilis, ior —	<i>that may be born</i>
Commendabilis, ior —	<i>commend-</i>	tractabilis, ior —	<i>tractable</i>
<i>(able</i>		Vendibilis, ior —	<i>saleable</i>
conducibilis, ior —	<i>profitable</i>	venerabilis, ior —	<i>venerable</i>
contemptibilis, ior —	<i>contemptible</i>	Comp. of a noun and a verb.	
Debilis, ior —	<i>weak, feeble</i>	manusuet-us, ior, <i>issimus</i>	
delectabilis, ior —	<i>delectable</i>	Comp. with PER and PRAE.	
desiderabilis, ior —	<i>desirable</i>	PER-difficilis — - <i>difficillimus</i>	
detestabilis, ior —	<i>abominable</i>	per-ditus, -ditior, -ditissimus	
Excusabilis, ior —	<i>excusable</i>	per-fectus, -fectior, -fectissimus	
execrabilis, ior —	<i>horrible</i>	per-lucidus, -lucidior, -lucidissi-	
exorabilis, ior —	<i>easy to be intreated</i>	per-bonus, — -optinus (mus	
Favorabilis, ior —	<i>favourable</i>	per-pauci, — -paucissimi	
flebilis, ior —	<i>to be lamented</i>	per-plexus, -plexior —	
Habilis 3 *	<i>suitable</i>	per-plexè, -plexiùs —	
horribilis, ior —	<i>dreadful</i>	per-multus, -plures, -plurimum	
Ignorabilis, ior —	<i>that may easily</i>	per-quisitè, -quisitiùs —	
<i>(be unknown</i>		per-sequens, — -sequentissimus	
immobilis, ior —	<i>unmoveable</i>	per-severans, -severantior, -seve-	
impetrabilis, ior —	<i>easily obtained</i>	<i>(rantissimus</i>	
inamabilis, ior —	<i>unpleasant</i>	per-severanter, -severantiùs, -se-	
incredibilis, ior —	<i>incredible</i>	<i>(verantissimè</i>	
insanabilis, ior —	<i>incurable</i>	pe-spectus, — -spectissimus	
insatiabilis, ior —	<i>insatiable</i>	per-spicax, -spicacior —	
intestabilis, ior —	<i>detestable</i>	per-suasus, — -suasissimus	
intolerabilis, ior —	<i>not to be endured</i>	per-tenuis, — tenuissimus	
intractabilis, ior —	<i>untractable</i>	per-vagatus, -vagatior, -vagatifi-	
irrevocabilis, ior —	<i>not to be recall'd</i>	<i>(simus</i>	
Laudabilis, ior —	<i>commendable</i>	per-versus, -versior, -versissimus	
Memorabilis, ior —	<i>memorable</i>	per-	

* The words with the figure 3 annexed form all the degrees of comparison.

per-vulgatus, -vulgatior, -vulga- (tiffimus)	prae-ruptus, -ruptior, -ruptiffi- (mus)
PRÆ-cellens, -cellentior, -cel- (lentissimus)	prae-sens, -sention, -sentionissimus
prae-clarus, -clarior, -clarissimus	prae-stabilis, -stabilior —
prae-fractus, -fractior —	prae-stans, -stantior, -stantissimus

That want the Positive g.

_____ citerior,	citimus	<i>near.</i>	(ex citra)
_____ interior,	intimus	<i>inner.</i>	(intra)
_____ ulterior,	ultimus	<i>further.</i>	(ultra)
_____ propior,	proximus	<i>near.</i>	(prope)
_____ mitius,	mitissimè	<i>with moderation.</i>	
_____ deterior,	deterimus	<i>worse.</i>	(a deter obs.)
_____ prior,	primus	<i>former.</i>	(a prae)
_____ potior,	potissimus	<i>better.</i>	(a potis)
_____ ocior,	ocissimus	<i>swifter.</i>	(ab ὠκυς)

Three want the Positive and Superlative.

anterior *former.* sequior *worse.* fatior *better.*

Some want the Comparative.

Bellus, consultus, diversus, invictus, invitus, inclytus, malevolens, mellitus, meritus, novus, facer nuper, &c.

Some want the Superlative.

Adolescens, communis, devinctus, longinquus, proclivis, taciturnus, &c.

ADJECTIVES irregularly compared.

Vid. Introduction, p. 9, to which may be added.

dexter	dexterior	dextimus	<i>lucky.</i>
sinister	finisterior	finistimus	<i>unlucky.</i>
nequam	nequior	nequissimus	<i>naughty.</i>
imbecillis	imbecillior	{ imbecillimus & imbecillissimus }	<i>weak.</i>
maturus	maturior	{ maturrimus & muturissimus }	<i>ripe.</i>
vetus	veterior	veterrimus	<i>ancient.</i>
superus	superior	supremus v. summus	<i>upper.</i>
inferus	inferior	infimus v. imus	<i>low.</i>
exterus	exterior	extremus v. extimus	<i>outer.</i>
			posterus

posterus	posterior	postremus v. postumus	late.
juvenis	junior	minimus natu	young.
senex	senior	maximus natu	old.
diu	diutiùs	diutissimè	long.
beneficus	beneficentior	beneficentissimus	kind.
maledicus	maledicentior	maledicentissimus	abusive.
honorificus	honorificentior	honorificentissimus	honourable.
honorificè	honorificentiùs	honorificentissimè	honourably.
magnificus	magnificentior	magnificentissimus	stately.
munificus	munificentior	munificentissimus	liberal.

ARTICLE IX.

Pronouns compounded are thus declined.

Quan-tuscunque, tacunque, tumcunque	how great soever.
quo-tuscunque, tacunque, tumcunque	what person is there?
quan-tuslibet, talibet, tumlibet	} as great as you list.
quan-tusvis, tavis, tumvis	
quicunque, quaecunque, quodcunque	whosoever.
quis, quae, quid <i>vel</i> quod	who? which?
quidam, quaedam, quoddam <i>vel</i> quiddam	a certain person or thing.
quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet <i>vel</i> quidlibet	whatever he or it be.
quisnam, quaenam, quodnam <i>vel</i> quidnam	who? what?
quispiam, quaequam, quodpiam v. quidpiam	some body or thing.
quivis, quaevis, quodvis <i>vel</i> quidvis	any person or thing.
quisquam, quaequam, quidquam v. quicquam	any one.
quisque, quaeque, quodque <i>vel</i> quidque	every man or thing.

Quisquis *whosoever*, is thus declined;

S. N. *quisquis* *m.* and *f.* *quidquid vel quicquid* *n.*

Ac. *quidquid vel quicquid* *n.*

Ab. *quoquo quaque quoquo* *m. f. n.*

Nom. *unusquisque unaquaeque unumquodque*

Gen. *uniuscujusque* *every one.*

These have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and Nom. and Ac. pl. Neuter.

S. N. *aliquis, aliqua, aliquod vel aliquid* } *some person or thing.*
 gen. *alicujus*

Siquis, siqua, siquod vel quid *if any one.*

Nequis,

Nequis, -qua, -quod *vel* quid } *lest any one.*
 Nunquis, -quae *vel* -qua, -quod *vel* quid } *is there any one?*
 Ecquis, -quae *vel* qua, -quod *vel* quid }
 Idem, eadem, idem } *the same.*

☞ *Quidam* and *idem* put *n* instead of *m* before *d*, for the better sound,
 as *quendam, quandam.*

S. N. Isthic, isthaec, isthoc *vel* isthuc.

Ac. Isthunc, isthanc, isthoc *vel* isthuc.

Ab. Isthoc, isthac, isthoc.

Pl. N. and Ac. isthaec.

S. N. hiccine, haecine, hoccine.

Ac. huncine, hancine, hoccine.

Ab. hoccine, haccine, hoccine.

Pl. Nom. and Ac. haecine *neuter.*

So hicce, haecce, hocce, &c.

Ac. eccum, eccam. Pl. eccos, eccas, *as of ecce and is.*

Ac. ell-um, -am. Pl. -os, -as, *of ecce and ille.*

S. N. egomet, gen. meimet, dat. mihimet.

S. Gen. tuimet, dat. tibimet, ac. temet.

S. and P. gen. suimet, dat. sibimet, ac. semet.

☞ *Te* and *se* are doubled, as *tete, sese*.—*pte* is put to the ablatives
meo, tuo, suo, nostro and *vestro*; *mea, tua, sua, nostra* and *vestra*;
 as *meopte, tuopte; meapte, tuapte, &c.*

Nom. alius, alia, aliud, gen. alius, dat. alii, &c.

Hi et hae com-plures, *haec* -plura et -pluria, gen. -plurium.
 pos. grad. non comparativi. GELLIUS.

ARTICLE X.

To know the Conjugation of a Verb by the Indicative
 Present.

The R U L E.

IIId. -eo. IVth. -io. IIId. in the List. Ist. be the rest all.

EXCEPT.

II in *eo* of the Ist.
 be-o, are
 calceo

to bless
to shoe

creo
 cunco
 enucleo

to create
to wedge
to explain
 galeo

galeo, are	to put on a helmet	glacio, are	to freeze
laqueo	to ensnare	glorior, ari	to boast
lineo	to delineate	hio	to gape
meo	to go or pass	inebrio	to make drunk
nauseo	to be sea-sick	inficior, ari	to deny
sereo	to hake and spit	initior	to initiate
2 in eo of the 4th.		injurior	to wrong
eo, ire	to go	insidior	to lie in wait
qu-eo, ire	to be able	lanio	to butcher
51 in io of the 1st.		luxurio	to wanton
ampl-io, are	to enlarge	negotior, ari	to trade
angario	to press	nuncio	to tell
ascio	to hew or chip	otior, ari	to loiter
auxilior, ari	to help	pio	to atone
basio	to kiss	praelior, ari	to skirmish
brevio	to abridge	praemior	to make prizes
calumnior, ari	to slander	propitio	to appease
centurio	to divide	radio	to shine
concilio	to procure	repudio	to divorce
convicior, ari	to reproach	retalio	to do like for like
crucio	to torment	fatio	to satisfy
decurio	to divide	faucio	to wound
digladiator, ari	to fence	focio	to associate or join
effigio	to form or fashion	somnio	to dream
emacio	to make lean	spatior, ari	to walk abroad
excorio	to pluck off the skin	spolio	to plunder
fastigio	to raise	suavior, ari	to kiss
ferior, ari	to keep holyday	tripudio	to dance
frio	to crumble	vario	to vary
furio	to enrage	vindemio	to gather grapes
		vitio	to corrupt

To know the Perfect Tense and Supine.

I. Verbs of the *first* conjugation regularly change -as in the present tense into -avi in the perfect, and -atum in the supine; as,

Am-o, as	am-avi	am-atum.	sono, sonui, ⁴⁵	sonaturus	sound
Irregulars 15.			tono, tonui, ⁴⁶	—	thunder
TO			veto, vetui, ⁴⁷	vetitum	forbid
Cubo as	cubui ⁴³	cubitum	crepo, crepui,	crepitum	crack
domo,	domui, ⁴⁴	domitum	frico, fricui,	frictum ⁴⁸	rub

⁴³. cubavi, *Quintil.* incubavi, *Plin.*—⁴⁴. domavi, *Flor.*—⁴⁵. personavi, *Apul.*—⁴⁶. in-tonatus, *Hor.*—⁴⁷. vetavi, *Perf.* vetatus, *Stat.*—⁴⁸. In the compounds rather -fricatum.

seco, secui, sectum ⁴⁹	cut	juvo, juvi, ⁵² jutum	help
neco, necui ⁵⁰ nectum necatum	slay	poto, potavi, potum ⁵³	drink
mico, micui <i>et</i> micavi —	glitter	do, dedi, datum	give
lavo, lavi, ⁵¹ lotum lautum	wash	sto, steti, statum	stand

II. Verbs of the *second* conjugation *regularly* change *-es* in the present tense into *ui* in the perfect, and *itum* in the supine; as,

Mon-eo, es mon-ui mon-itum.

Irregulars 51.

-BEO

T O

jubeo, *es* jussi, jussum command

Sorb-eo, sorbui } sorptum sup

et sorpsi }

-CEO

arceo, arcui, arctum tie hard

doceo, docui, doctum teach

misceo, miscui, mistum } mix

et mixtum⁵⁴ }

mulceo, mulsi, mulsum soothe

luceo, luxi — shine

-DEO

prandeo, prandi, — *pransum* dine

freudeo, frendi, fressum gnash

strideo, stridi — squeak

sedeo, sedi, sessum sit

video, vidi, visum see

pe-ndeo, -pendi — hang

mo-rdeo, -mordi, morsum bite

spo-ndeo, -pondi⁵⁵ -nsum promise

to-ndeo, -tondi, tonsum shear

suadeo, suasi, suasum persuade

rideo, risi, risum laugh

ardeo, arsi, arsurus burn

-GEO

algeo, alsi, alsum⁵⁶ be chill

fulgeo, fulsi — shine

in-dulgeo, -dulsi, -dultum indulge

mulgeo { mulsi *et* mulxi, } multum milk

tergeo, tersi, tersum wipe

turgeo, tursi — swell

urgeo, ursi — urge

augeo, auxi, auctum increase

frigeo, frixi — be cold

lugeo, luxi, luctum mourn

-LEO -IEO -NEO

fleo, flevi, fletum weep

de-leo,⁵⁷ -levi, -letum blot out

com-pleo,⁵⁸ -plevi, -pletum fill

cileo, civi, citum rouse

ileo, viévi, viétum bind, hoop

neo, nevi, netum spin

teneo, tenui, tentum hold

maneo, mansi, mansum tarry

-REO -SEO UEO

haerco, haesi, haesum stick

torreo, torrui, tostum parch

censeo, censui, censum judge

languco, langui — languish

liqueo,⁵⁹ licui — be moist

torqueo, torsi, tortum wrest

49. Sécaturus, Columel.—50 eneeavi, Plant. -atus, Plin. enecui-ctus passim: inter-necatus, Plant. Cicero.—51 legitur etiam lavo lavis apud Virg. et Hor. lavatus, Plant. lavaturus, Ovid. N.B. In the compounds lavo is made luo.—52 juvavi, Manil. juvaturus, Plin. Sall. adjuvatus, Frontin.—53 potatum, Plant. aturus, Ter.

54. Mixtus in antiquis monumentis, reperitur, ac prope accedit ad græcum μίξω fut. a μίγω.—55. pro spondendi, posteriore s. omisso euphoniae gratiâ.—56. unde, ab his nihil est ablativus apud Ciceronem.—57. ab antiquo leo.—58. simplex pleo vix in usu.—59. simplex vix in usu.

-VEO	TO		TO
caveo, cavi, cautum	beware	foveo, fovi, fotum	cherish
faveo, favi, fautum	favour	moveo, movi, motum	move
paveo, pavi —	dread	voveo, vovi, votum	vow
ferveo, fervi —	be hot	con-niveo, nivi et nixi —	wink

III. A List of Verbs of the *third* Conjugation.

-Bo BI PSI TUM	TO	-Do -DI -SUM	TO
Bib-o, is bibi, bibitum	drink	cado, cecidi, casum ⁶⁴	fall
scabo, scabi —	scratch	caedo, cecidi, caesum	beat
lambo, lambi —	lick	edo, edi, esum	eat
glubo, ⁶⁰ glubi, gluptum ⁶⁰	flea	pe-do, -pédi, peditum	break wind
scribo, scripsi, scriptum	write	fido, fidi —	sink, sit
nubo, nupsi, nuptum	be married	scando, scandi, scansum	climb
cumbo, ⁶¹ cubui, cubitum	lie down	mando, mandi, mansum	eat
-Co -CI -XI -CTUM		pando, pandi { pansum et passum }	spread
ico, ici, ictum	strike	ac-cendo, ⁶⁵ -cendi, -censum	kindle
vinco, vici, victum	overcome	in-cendo, ⁶⁵ -cendi, censum	set (fire to)
parco, peperci, ⁶² parsum ⁶²	spare	de-fendo ⁶⁶ -fendi, -fensum	defend
disco, didici —	learn	prehendo, -hendi, -hensum	catch
posco, poposci —	require	pendo, pependi, pensum	weigh
quinisco, quexi ⁶³ —	stoop, strain	tendo, tetendi { tensum ⁶⁷ tentum }	stretch
dico, dixi, dictum	say	scindo, scidi, scissum	cut
duco, duxi, ductum	lead	findo, fidi, fissum	cleave
-Sco -VI -TUM		fundo, fundi, fustum	pour
pasco, pavi, pastum	feed	tundo, tutudi, tunsum	knock
quiesco, quievi, quietum	rest	ettusum }	
creasco, crevi, cretum	grow	con-tundo, tudi, tusum	bruise
scisco, scivi, scitum	decree	cudo, cudi, cusum	coin
suasco, suavi, suetum	be wont	rudo, radi —	bray
nosco, novi, notum	know		

Obs. Grammatici participium futuri in *rus* et perfecti in *us* a supino deducunt; hinc omnibus verbis supinum tribuunt, quorum alterutrum ex his participiis legitur, licet supinum ipsum apud veteres scriptores, qui hodie extant, nusquam compareat; quod non paucis eorum, quae in his tabulis continentur, accidit: His autem quae hic carent supinis, utrumque participium deesse intelligendum est.

⁶⁰ Boni pastores esse tondere pecus, non deglubere. *Sueton.* deglupta macnas. *Plaut.*—⁶¹ inusitatum praeterquam in compositis.—⁶² *comparco comparsi parcitum est.* *Plin.*—⁶³ *conquexi* apud *Capr.* et *Pompon.* in *Puiscian*—⁶⁴ *casum* vix legitur in compositione nisi in *occafus, occasurus, recasurus*.—⁶⁵ item *succendo*, composita a *cando* abstracto.—⁶⁶ Sic etiam *offendo* a *fendo* inusitatum.

-Do

-Do -si -sum			TO		TO	
vado, vasi, ⁶⁷ vasum			go	plango, planxi, planctum	lament	
rado, rasi, rasum			shave	cingo, cinxi, cinctum	gird	
laedo, laesi, laesum			hurt	lingo, linxi, linctum	lick	
ludo, lusi, lusum			play	tingo, tinxi, tinctum	dip; die	
divido, divisi, divisum			divide	stinguo, ⁷⁰ stinxi, stinctum	extin-	
trudo, trusi, trusum			thrust		(guish	
claudio, clausi, clausum			shut	fingo, finxi, fictum	feign	
plaudo, plausi, plausum			clap	mingo } minxi, mictum	piss	
rodo, rosi, rosium			gnaw	et meio }		
cedo, cessi, cessum			yield	ningo, ninxi	snow	
				pingo, pinxi, pictum	paint	
-Go -gi -ctum				stringo, strinxi, strictum	unsheath	
ago, egi, actum			do	fugo, fuxi, fuctum	suck	
fatago, fatégi —			be busy	ungo, unxi, unctum	anoint	
dego, degi —			live	jungo, junxi, junctum	join	
prodigo, prodégi			squander	mungo, munxi, munctum	cleanse	
cogo, coégi, coactum			compel	-Rgo -si -sum		
lego, legi, lectum			read	spargo, sparfi, sparsum	spread	
frango, fregi, fractum			break	mergo, merfi, mersum	drown	
pango, pegi et } pactum			join,	tergo, terfi, tersum	wipe	
panxi }			(plant	-Ho -xi -ctum		
pago, ⁶⁸ pepigi, pactum			bargain	traho, traxi, tractum	draw	
tango, tetigi, tactum			touch	veho, vexi, vectum	carry	
pungo, pupugi, punctum			prick	-Cio -ci -ctum		
-Go -xi -ctum				facio, feci, factum	do, make	
rego, rexi, rectum			govern	jacio, jeci, jactum	cast	
pergo, perrexī, perrectum			proceed	allicio, allexi, ⁷¹ allectum	allure	
furgo, surrexi, surrectum			rise	ad-spicio, -spexi, ⁷² spectum	behold	
tego, texi, tectum			cover	-Dio -di -sum		
figo, fixi, fixum			fasten	fodio, fodi, fossum	dig	
fligo, ⁶⁹ flixi, flictum			beat	-Gio -gi -tum		
frigo, frixi, frictum }			perch	fugio, fugi, fugitum	fly	
frixum }						
ango, anxī —			perplex			
clango, clanxi —			sound			

⁶⁷ *vasi* vix reperitur nisi in compositione.—⁶⁸ *Pago* exolevit, pro quo obtinet *pacifior*.—⁶⁹ Non occurrit, nisi in compositione; ut affligo, consligo, insligo.—⁷⁰ Apud Lucretium, sed vix alibi nisi in compositione, ut distingo, extinguo, &c.—⁷¹ Ita composita a *lacio* obsoleto, praeter *elicio elenti, elicium*.—⁷² Sic et cactera composita ab inusitato *specio*.

-PIO -PI -TUM TO	-Mo -UI -TUM TO
capio, cepi, captum . take	vomo, vomui, vomitum vomit
rapio, rapui, raptum snatch	gemo, gemui, gemitum groan
sapio, sapui et sapivi — be wise	fremo, fremui, fremitum roar
cupio, cupivi, cupitum covet	tremo, tremui — tremble
-RIO -RI -TUM	
pario, peperi, partum ⁷¹ bring forth	emo, emi, ⁷⁶ emtum buy
-TIO -SSI SSUM	ad-imo, -emi, -emtum take away
quatio, quassi, quassum ⁷² shake	demo, demsi, demtum take away
-Lo -UI { -TUM -SUM	premo, pressi, ⁷⁷ pressum press
alo, alui, altum et alitum nourish	como, comsi, ⁷⁸ comtum comb
malo, malui — choose	promo, promsi, promptum draw out
volo, volui — wish for	fumo, fumsi, fumentum take
nolo, nolui — refuse	-No -VI -TUM
colo, colui, cultum till	lino, livi ⁷⁹ et levi, litum dawb
occulo, occului, occultum hide	fino, fivi, fitum suffer
molo, molui, molitum grind	de-fino, -sivi et sii, -situm leave off
con-fulo, -fului, -fultum consult	cerno, crevi, ⁸⁰ cretum sift, see
ex-cello, ⁷³ -cellui, -celsum excel	sperno, spreui, spretum despise
per-cello, -culi, -culsum strike	sterno, stravi, ⁸¹ stratum lay flat
fallo, fefelli, falsum deceive	gigno, genui, genitum beget
refello, refelli — refute	pono, posui, positum put
psallo, psalli — sing	cano, cecini, cantum sing
fallo, falli, falsum salt	temno, tempsi, temptum slight
pello, pepuli, ⁷⁴ pulsum drive	-Po -PSI -PTUM
vello, velli et vulsi, vulsum pluck	carpo, carpsi, carptum crop
tollo, ⁷⁵ } sustuli, sublatum raise	clepo, clepsi, cleptum pilfer
suffero, }	repo, repsi, reptum crawl
extollo, extuli, elatum praise	scalpo, scalpsi, scalptum scratch
	sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum engrave
	serpo, serpsi, serptum creep

⁷¹ pro paritam, unde pariterus.—⁷² quassi extra compositionem non in usu.—⁷³ cello simplex non in usu.—⁷⁴ impelli. Terent.—⁷⁵ tollo olim habuit tetuli. Lucr. Plant. Terent. pro quo nunc composita sustuli et extuli sunt in usu; verum attollo caret praeterito et supinis, nam attuli allatum afferro sibi vindicat, cum non elevandi, sed apportandi vim habeat.—⁷⁶ Emo olim signabat tollo, hinc adimo, eximo, &c.—⁷⁷ premi. Catull.—⁷⁸ Saep̄ etiam leguntur cum p̄ inserto, compsi comptum, prompsi promptum, fumpsi sumptum, dempsi demptum, sed mendose.—⁷⁹ lini. Quint.—⁸⁰ crevi dicitur de adeunda haereditate apud Ciceronem; in videndi significatione vix occurrit simplex crevi cretum.—⁸¹ consterno est primae cum perturbationem animi designat; tertiae cum ad corpus refertur.

rumpo, rupi, ruptum <i>TO break</i>	mitto, misi, missum <i>TO send</i>
strepo, strepui, strepitum <i>bustle</i>	peto, petivi, petitum <i>aim at</i>
-Quo -Qui -Xi -CTUM	-Ecto -EX-I, -UI -EXUM
linquo, liqui, lictum <i>leave</i>	flecto, flexi, flexum <i>bend</i>
coquo, coxi, coctum <i>dress meat</i>	necto, nex-ui et -i, nexum <i>knit</i>
-Ro -VI -TUM	pecto, pex-ui et -i, pexum <i>comb</i>
quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum <i>seek</i>	plecto, plex-ui et -i, plexum <i>plait</i>
tero, trivi,⁸² tritum <i>wear</i>	-Vo -VI -UTUM
fero, sevi, satum <i>sow</i>	solvo, solvi, solutum <i>loose</i>
fero, ferui, fertum <i>rank, order</i>	volvo, volvi, volutum <i>roll</i>
gero, gessi, gestum <i>bear, carry</i>	vivo, vixi, victum <i>live</i>
uro, ussi, ustum <i>burn</i>	-Uo UI UTUM
fero, tuli, latum <i>bear, suffer</i>	tribuo, tribui, tributum <i>give</i>
verro, verri, versum <i>brush</i>	imbuo, imbui, imbutum <i>soak</i>
curro, cucurri, cursum <i>run</i>	acuo, acui, acutum <i>sharpen</i>
-So -SI et -SIVI -SITUM	induo, indui, indutum <i>put on</i>
facef-so, -si et sivi, situm <i>dispatch</i>	arguo, argui, argutum <i>prove</i>
lacef-so, -si et sivi, -situm <i>provoke</i>	luo, lui,⁸⁶ luitum <i>wash</i>
incef-so, -si et sivi, -situm <i>attack</i>	abluo, ablui, ablutum⁸⁷ <i>wash off</i>
capef-so, -si et sivi, -situm <i>take</i>	pl-uo, -ui et -uvi⁸⁸ — <i>rain</i>
<i>(in hand)</i>	nuo, nui, nutum <i>no</i>
arcesso,⁸³ arcessivi, arcessitum	minuo, minui, minutum <i>diminish</i>
<i>(send for)</i>	ster-nuo, -nui, -nutum <i>sneeze</i>
viso, visi, visum <i>visit</i>	spuo, spui, sputum <i>spit</i>
pinso, pinsui,⁸⁴ pistum⁸⁴ <i>bake</i>	respuo, respui — <i>refuse</i>
depsio, depui,⁸⁵ depstum⁸⁵ <i>knead</i>	ruo, rui, ruitum <i>fall</i>
-To -TI { -TUM	di-ruo, -rui, -rutum⁸⁹ <i>pull down</i>
-SUM	gruo, grui — <i>cry as a crane</i>
sisto, stiti, statum <i>stop</i>	suo, sui, sutum <i>sew, stitch</i>
listo, steti, statum <i>stand still</i>	statuo, statui, statutum <i>appoint</i>
verto, verti, versum <i>turn</i>	metuo, metui — <i>fear</i>
meto, messui, messum <i>reap</i>	exuo, cxui, exutum <i>put off</i>
sterto, stertui — <i>snore</i>	fluo, fluxi,⁹⁰ fluxum <i>flow</i>
	struo, struxi, structum <i>build</i>
	texo, texui, textum <i>weave</i>

⁸² *terui*. Plaut. *atcerui*. Tibul.—⁸³ *pro eo*, inveterato errore *arcesso* dici solet.—
⁸⁴ *pinxi*. Varr. *pinxitum*. Colum. *pinsum*. Vitt. *pinxitum* est integrum; *pinsum* et *pistum* per Syncopen facta.—⁸⁵ *depsi*. Var. *depsus*. Cat.—⁸⁶ olim *luit*, et hinc *diluvium* *calluvies*.—⁸⁷ sic caetera composita a *luo*.—⁸⁸ nunc *pluvia*.—⁸⁹ sic caetera composita a *ruo*, ut *obruo*, &c.—⁹⁰ olim *fluvi*, unde *fluvius*.

IV. Verbs of the *fourth* conjugation *regularly* change *is* in the present tense into *ivi* in the perfect, and *itum* in the supine; as,

Aud-io, is aud-ivi aud-itum.

Irregulars 20.

Cio *impure* -fi; after n -xi;

fulcio, is fulsi, fultum	TO prop
farcio, farfi, fartum ⁹¹	stuff
farcio, farfi, fartum	mend
fancio, fanxi, ⁹² sanctum	establish
vincio, vinxi, vinctum	bind
amicio, amixi, ⁹³ amictum	cloathe
raucio, rausi, rausum	be hoarse
salio, salui, ⁹⁴ saltum	leap
sepelio, sepelivi, sepultum ⁹⁵	bury
veneo, ven-ivi et -ii, venum	be sold
venio, veni, ventum	come

sepio, sepfi, ⁹⁶ septum	TO hedge
haurio, hausi, haustum ⁹⁷	draw
sentio, sensi, sensum	perceive
singultio, singultivi, singultum	
farrio, farrui, ⁹⁸ farristum	weed

Compounds of *Pario*.

aperio, aperui, apertum	TO open
operio, operui, opertum	cover
com-perio, -peri, -pertum	know
	(certainly
re-perio, -peri, -pertum	find by
	(chance

Of Verbs in *or*.

1. Verbs *Passive* form the *perfect* tense from the *supine* of their *active* by changing *um* into *us*, with *sum* or *fui* added to it; as, of am-o, -as, -avi, -atum, Am-or, -aris v. -are, -atus sum v. fui, &c.

2. Verbs *Deponent* form their *perfect* tense by supposing an *active* in *o*, and giving it a *perfect* tense and *supine* by the rules; then changing *um* into *us*, with *sum*, *fui*, &c. as,

Of laet-o, -as, -avi, -atum, Laet-or, -aris v. are, -atus sum v. fui, &c.
 ver-co, -es, -ui, -itum, Ver-eor, -éris v. -ére, -itus sum v. fui, &c.
 fun-go, -gis, -xi, -ctum, Fun-gor, -geris v. -ere, -ctus sum v. fui, &c.
 pot-io, -is, -ivi, -itum, Pot-ior, -iris v. íre, -itus sum v. fui, &c.

Deponents irregularly conjugated.

II.	TO		TO
Fateor, éris, fassus sum	confess	reor, ratus	suppose
medeor, medicatus ⁹⁹	heal	tueor, }	look to,
miseror, misertus ¹⁰⁰	pity	tuor, }	defend
		tuitus et tutus	

⁹¹ *farcus*. Cic. Colum. *farcitus*. Varr.—⁹² *fanxi*. Liv. Cic. *sancti*. Pompon. *sanctas*. Cic.—⁹³ *amici*. Brut. apud Dionys.—⁹⁴ *salii*. Stat. *resalii*. Priscian. Obs. *salio* pro *condio* regulam sequitur.—⁹⁵ *sepelitus*. Cat.—⁹⁶ *sepvi*. Liv.—⁹⁷ *hauris*. Virg.—⁹⁸ *farrivi*. Columel.—⁹⁹ *mutuatam a medicor*.—¹⁰⁰ *miseritum est*. Ter.

III. Am-

III.

TO

Amplector, eris, -xus sum, *embrace*
 apiscor, aptus *get, recover*
 ad-ipiscor, -eptus *obtain*
 com-miniscor, -mentus *devise*
 com-plector, -plexus *surround*
 de-fetiscor, -fessus *be weary*
 exper-giscor, -rectus² *awake*
 fruor, fruitus et fructus² *enjoy*
 fungor, functus *do an office*
 gradior, gressus *step, go*
 irascor, iratus *be angry*
 labor, lapsus *slip*
 loquor, locutus *speak*
 nanciscor, nactus *find, acquire*
 nascor, natus³ *be born*
 nitor, nifus et nixus *strive*
 obliviscor, oblitus *forget*
 paciscor, pactus *bargain*
 patior, passus *suffer*
 pro-ficiscor, -fectus *travel*
 queror, questus sum *complain*
 re-miniscor, -cordatus⁴ *remember*

revertor, reversus⁵ sum **T**O return
 sequor, secutus *follow*
 vescor, pastus⁶ *feed on*
 ulciscor, ultus *revenge*
 utor, usus *use*

IV.

assentior, iris, assensus *agree to*
 com-perior, -pertus⁷ *discover*
 ex-perior, -pertus *try*
 op-perior, -pertus⁷ *stay for*
 metior, mensus⁸ *measure*
 ordior, orsus *begin*

III. and IV.

orior,⁹ ortus *arise*
 morior,¹⁰ mortuus *die*
 potior, potitus *enjoy*

Neutro-passives 6.

Audeo, ausus sum *dare*
 fido, fesus *trust*
 fio, factus *become*
 gaudeo, gavisus *rejoice*
 moereō, moestus *grieve*
 soleo, solitus¹¹ *be wont*

ARTICLE XI.

Of Compound Verbs.

RULE I.

Compounds as Simple; but double not the Syllable, which the Simple doubles; as, of *pendo pependi, rependo* makes *rependi*.

¹ *expergitus*. Lucr.—² *fructus*. Patere. Lucr. &c. *fruiturus*. Cic.—³ *nasciturus*. Pallad.—⁴ a *recordor*.—⁵ Hujusce verbi forma passiva in temporibus imperfectis utebantur optimi auctores *revert-itur, -ebatur, etur*; forma autem activa in perfectis, *revert-i, -eram, -erim, -issim, -ero*; sic *divertor* to lodge.—⁶ a *pastor*.—⁷ *opperitus*. Plaut.—⁸ *metisus*. Ulpian.—⁹ *orior* et *potior* alias voces habent tertiæ, alias quartæ; ac infiniti *oriri* et *potiri* semper quartæ.—¹⁰ ab *orior* et *morior* fiunt participia in *ris* *oriturus, moriturus*; Legimus *moriri* apud. Ovid Met. 14. 215.—¹¹ *solui*. Sall.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Disco makes didici in the compounds, and posco poposci.
2. Ad, con, de, ex, per, prae, pro, -curri and -cucurri.
3. Mico, micui and micavi; so emico dimico; the rest ui only.
4. Plico with con, in, ex, ad, -ui and -avi; so increpo, discrepo.
5. Of do 13 compounds of the third make -didi and -ditum.
Credo, edo, dedo, ^{reddo}perdo, abdoque, et obdo,
Condo, indo, trado, prodo, sic vendoque et addo;
Abscondo, abscondi: Of sto -stiti and -staturus.
6. Of oleo to smell, -olui, -olitum; to grow, -olévi, -olétum.¹²
7. Ferveo, con, ex -ferbui; re -fervi; de both -ferbui and -fervi.
8. Per-cello perculi perculsum; the rest -calui celium.¹³
9. Pungo compounds -punxi; but repupugi and repunxi.
10. Of eo, ivi itum compounds as ab-eo -ivi v. -ii -itum.
11. Sco derivative, as its primitive; tepui tepeo and tepeisco.

R U L E II.

15 verbs change the first vowel into *e* in their compounds;

Jacto, lacto, facro, fallo, arceo, tracto¹⁴ fatiscor,
Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo, parioque
Farcio and gradior; as, of spargo sparsi, dispergo disperfi.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. From damno condemno;¹⁵ from capto incepto, recepto.
2. From mando commendo;¹⁵ of patior is made perpetior.¹⁵
3. Audio forms obedio;¹⁵ of halo is made anhelo.¹⁵
4. Canto occento;¹⁵ juro bath dezero pezero and perjuro.¹⁵
5. Pasco pavi bath -pescui¹⁵ joined with com, dis.

R U L E III.

15 verbs change the first vowel into *i* in their compounds;

Habeo, lateo, salio,¹⁶ statuo, cado, lacdo;
Tango, cano,¹⁷ quaero, caedo, cecidi,
Egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapio;¹⁸
As, of rapio rapui, eripio makes eripui.

12 adoleo, -cvi, -ultum.—13 ut excello, praecello.—14 Excipe pertracto, retracto.—
15 caetera composita a damno, mando, patior, audio, halo, canto, juro, pasco, retinent
vocalam primam simplicis.—16 composita a salio salui habent -silui et -sili; ut re-
silio, &c.—17 a cano composita dant cinni in perfecto; ut concino, concinni.—18 addo
displiceo a placeo et ambio ab eo; caetera composita a placeo et eo sequuntur formam
simplicium.

R U L E IV.

Eleven verbs; ago,¹⁹ emo,²⁰ sedeo,²¹ rego,²² frango,²³ Capiō,²⁴ jacio,²⁵ lacio, specio, premo, pango,²⁶ Compounded change their first vowel into i In the present form, but retain it in the perfect; As, of capio cepi, incipio makes incēpi: So lego,²⁷ unless joined with per, prae, re, sub or trans; Fateor, and facio too, when joined with a preposition.²⁸

R U L E V.

Of calco, salto compounds change a into u.²⁹ Claudio, quatio, lavo, causo, leave out a in their compounds.³⁰ Plaudo's compounds put o for au;³¹ except applaudo.

Supines of compound Verbs.

R U L E

Supines compound as simple; but some vary a little.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Compounds of tunsum make tūsum: luitum and ruitum lose i.*
2. *Of salio saltum is made sūltum:³² Of se-o satum is made situm.³³*
3. *Nine supines change a into e in their compounds;*
 Captum, jactum raptum, cantum, partum, sparsum,
 Carptum, fartum, fassum, and with prepositions factum.³⁴
4. *Of nōsco -notum, all but cognitum, agnitum.*
5. *Of edo esum, comedo makes comestum and comesum.*
6. *Of tendo ad, con, ob, prae, pro, -tentum; the rest -sum, -tum.³⁵*
7. *Of arceo arctum compounds -ercitum; as exercitum.*

¹⁹ circumago, perago, satago retinent a; dego, cogo, amittunt a.—²⁰ demo, premo, sumo, amittunt e.—²¹ supersedeo et supersideo.—²² pergo, surgo amittunt re in praesenti formā.—²³ Excipe affrango.—²⁴ antecapio.—²⁵ legimus superjaccio et superjicio.—²⁶ depango, oppango, circumpango, repango retinent a.—²⁷ intelligo, diligo, negligo -lexi.—²⁸ inficio, infectum.—²⁹ ut inculco, resulto.—³⁰ ut excludo, percutio, proluo, accuso.—³¹ explodo.—³² exultum.—³³ insitum.—³⁴ infectum.—³⁵ intensum et intensum; ostensum frequentius utimur quam ostentum. Lewis.

☞ In compound verbs sometimes both words remain entire; as *adeo*, *transeo*; sometimes a letter is added, as *reddo*, *redeo*, *prodeo*: Sometimes a letter is taken away, as *coëo* of *con* and *eo*, *cogo* of *con* and *ago*: Sometimes a letter is changed for the better sound, as *impono* of *in* and *pono*; or the last letter of the preposition being a consonant is changed into the first letter of the verb, as *accipio* of *ad* and *cipio*, *corripio* of *con* and *rapio*: Sometimes *in*, when joined to a word beginning with *n*, changes the *n* into a *g*; so from *in* and *nobilis* comes *ignobilis*.

Some of the general significations of prepositions in composition are as follows;

A	{ away, from	{ avertō	to turn from
AB		{ abjicio	to cast away
ABS		{ abstineo	to hold from
AD	to	adjungo	to join to
ANTE	before	antevenio	to come before
CON	together	concurro	to run together
DE	{ from	detineo	to hold from
	{ down	descendo	to go down
E	{ of or out	ejicio	to cast off or out
EX	{ from or away	eripio	to take from or away
	{ in	insum	to be in
IN	{ into	inspicio	to look into
	{ upon or against	incurro	to run upon or against
INTER	between or among;	interpono	to put between or among
OB	before or against	oppono	to place before or against
PER	through	perlego	to read through
PRAE	before or first	praepono	to set before or first
POST	after or behind	postpono	to set after or behind
PRO	{ forwards	progredior	to go forwards
	{ forth	provenio	to come forth
	{ back	respicio	to look back
RE	{ again	repuerasco	to grow a child again
	{ Sometimes negative	retego	to uncover
	{ under	subjicio	to lay under
SUB	{ a little	suboleo	to smell a little
SE	aside	seduco	to draw aside
SUPER	{ upon	supercribo	to write upon
	{ over	supersum	to be over and above

ARTICLE XII.

Verbs Defective and Redundant.

Vid. Introduction, p. 28.

I. That want the Perfect Tense and Supine.

1. Inceptives, that come from nouns; as, *puerasco to grow childly*
2. Meditatives, except *parturio to be in labour*, *esurio to want to eat*.
3. All Passives, whose actives want the supine; as, *metuor to be feared*.
4. These following;

caret praeterito et supinis, &c.

Vergo	<i>to veer or incline</i>	flaveo	<i>to be yellow</i>
ambigo	<i>to doubt</i>	liveo	<i>to be livid</i>
glisco	<i>to grow or spread</i>	aveo	<i>to desire much</i>
fatisco	<i>to faint</i>	glabreo	<i>to be smooth</i>
polleo	<i>to be mighty</i>	denseo	<i>to be thick</i>
nideo	<i>to shine</i>	hisco	<i>to gape</i>
mineo	<i>to hang ready to fall</i>	ranceo	<i>to be rank</i>
ferio	<i>to strike</i>	lanceo	<i>to abound</i>
furo	<i>to rage</i>	vegeo	<i>to be lively</i>
lento	<i>to bend</i>	strideo, ére }	<i>to crack, hiss</i>
antesto }	<i>to surpass</i>	strido, ere }	
antisto }		uveo	<i>to be moist</i>
clueo	<i>to be famous</i>	praevertor	<i>to go before</i>
labo	<i>to totter</i>	fisto	<i>to stand</i>
ceveo	<i>to wag the tail</i>	liquor	<i>to waste, be dissolved</i>
ringor	<i>to grin</i>		

II. That have the Perfect Tense of both the Active and Passive Voice.

Com-placeo	-placui et -placitus sum	<i>to be well liked</i>
Con-fido	-fidi et -fusus sum	<i>to trust</i>
Nubo	nupsi et nupta sum	<i>to be married</i>
Poto	potavi et potus sum	<i>to drink</i>
Prandeo	prandi et pransus sum	<i>to dine</i>
Libet	libuit et libitum est	<i>it liketh</i>
Licet	licuit et licitum est	<i>it is lawful</i>
Miseret	miseritum et miseritum est	<i>I pity</i>
Placet	placuit et placitum est	<i>it pleaseth</i>
Pudet	puduit et puditum est	<i>I am ashamed</i>
Taeedet	taeduit et taesum est	<i>I am weary</i>

II. That

III. That have the same Indicative present, but of different Sense.

abdico, are	TO cast off	fundo, are	TO found
abdico, ere	refuse	fundo, ere	pour
accido, ere	happen	incido, ere	fall in
accido, ere	cut close	incido, ere	cut
aggero, are	cast up	indico, are	shew
aggero, ere	heap	indico, ere	denounce
appello, are	call	lego, are	send on an embassy
appello, ere	arrive	lego, ere	read
colligo, are	bind	mando, are	command
colligo, ere	gather	mando, ere	eat
colo, are	strain	occido, ere	fall
colo, ere	till	occido, ere	kill
compello, are	address	pedo, are	prop
compello, ere	drive	pedo, ere	break wind
concido, ere	fall	praedico, are	proclaim
concido, ere	cut in pieces	praedico, ere	foretell
decido, ere	fall down	recido, ere	fall back
decido, ere	cut off	recido, ere	cut off
deligo, are	bind	relego, are	send away
deligo, ere	choose	relego, ere	read again
dico, are	dedicate	sero, are	lock
dico, ere	tell, say	sero, ere	sow or plant
educo, are	educate	vado, are	wade
educo, ere	lead forth	vado, ere	go
effero, are	enrage	volo, are	fly
effero, ere	entol	volo, velle	be willing
excido, ere	fall out		
excido, ere	cut out		

IV. That have the same Perfect Tense.

aceo, acui	TO be sour	paveo, pavi	TO dread
acuo, acui	whet	pasco, pavi	feed
cresco, crevi	grow	pendeo, pependi	hang
cerno, crevi	see	pendo, pependi	weigh
frigeo, frixi	be cold	consto, constiti	consist
frigo, frixi	fry, parch	consisto, constiti	stand
fulgeo, fulsi	shine	exto, extiti	stand out
fulcio, fulsi	prop	existo, extiti	be
luceo, luxi	shine	insto, institi	urge
lugeo, luxi	mourn	insisto, institi	stand in, insist on
mulceo, mulsi	stroke		
mulgeo, mulsi	milk		

V. That

V. That have the same Supine.

<i>cerno, cretum</i>	TO see	<i>pando, passum</i>	TO spread
<i>cresco, cretum</i>	grow	<i>patior, passum</i>	suffer
<i>paciscor, pactum</i>	bargain	<i>verro, verum</i>	brush, sweep
<i>pango, pactum</i>	drive in, fasten	<i>verto, verum</i>	turn

ARTICLE XIII.

Particular Observations on the five Declensions of Nouns.

I. Declension.

Obs. 1. The first declension has in the nominative four different endings; one latin, as *musæ*; and three greekish in *-as, -es -e;* as *Aenéas, Anc'ises, Penelope*, declined thus;

S. N. Hic *Aenéas*, G. D. *Aenéæ*, Acc. *Aenéam* v. *-an*, V. Ab. *Aenéâ*.

S. N. Hic *Anchises*,³⁶ G. D. *Anchisæ*, Ac. *Anchisen* v. *em*, V. Ab. *Anchise* v. *sâ*.

S. N. Hæc *Penelope*, G. *Penelopes*, D. *Penelope*, Ac. *Penelopen*, V. Ab. *Penelope*.

Note. If any of them have the plural (as *epitome, Thebe*) they are declined like *musæ, arum, &c.*

2. The poets sometimes turn *æ* in the genitive into *âs* or *ai*; as *familiâs, viâs, terrai, aulai*, for *familiae, viae, terrae, aulae*: And sometimes *arum* is contracted into *ûm*; as *coelicolûm* for *coelicoiarum*.

3. Some Hebrew names are thus declined; S. N. Hic *Abraham*, G. D. *Abrahæ*, Ac. *Abraham*, V. Ab. *Abrahâ*.

II. Declension.

Obs. 1. Greekish Nouns of this declension end in *os, on*, and *eus*; nouns in *os* make the gen. in *o* or *i*, and the accus. in *on*; as, S. N. *Androgeos*, G. *Androgeo* v. *Androgei*, D. *Androgeo*, Ac. *Androgeon*, Ab. *Androgeo*. Nouns in *on* are neuter. Nouns in *eus*

³⁶ All patronymics in *-des*, stones, jewels, and some proper names in *-tes*; as, *Aestes, Achates, Agyrtes, Antiphates, Bootes, Butes, Læites, Leucates, Menoctes, Philoctetes, Polites, Proctites, Thersites, Thyestes* and *Zetes*, commonly follow this declension; also denominatives of wine in *-ites*, as *Abrotenites*: Other nouns in *es* are generally of the third; some of both. *Shaw*.

are either declined like latins in *us*; as *Orpheus*, *i*, *o*, *um*, &c. or after the Greek thus; S. N. *Orpheus*, G. *eos*, D. *ei*, Ac. *ea*, V. *eu*, Ab. *eo*: So other greekish nouns are sometimes latinized thus; S. N. *Athos*, G. D. Ac. V. Ab. *Atho*. S. N. and V. *Dido*, G. *Didūs*, -*onis*, D. *Dido*, -*oni*, Ac. *Dido*, -*onem*, Ab. *Dido*, -*one*. But *Argo*, *Clio*, *Erato*, *Calypso*, *Clotho*, *Echo*, *Sappho*, rather *ūs* than *onis*. The genitive plural of all greek nouns ends in *ôn* (ων).

2. *Deus* is thus declined in the plural number; N. *Dei* et *dii*, G. *deorum*, D. *deis* et *diis*, Ac. *deos*, V. *dei* et *dii*, Ab. *deis* et *diis*. Instead of *ambos* and *duos* the ancients said *ambo* and *duo*.

III. Declension.

Obs. 1. Greekish nouns in *is* or *ys*, with the genitive not increasing, or *os* pure, make *im* or *in*, *ym* or *yn* in the accusative, and *i*, *ye* or *y* in the ablative, as

<i>Tyber-is</i> , - <i>is</i> , the river Tyber,	<i>Ty-</i>	<i>poësis</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>ios</i> v. <i>eos</i> poetry, <i>im</i> v. <i>in</i> , <i>i</i>
	(<i>berim</i> v. <i>in</i> , <i>i</i>	<i>Tethys</i> , <i>yes</i> Tethys, <i>ym</i> v. <i>yn</i> , <i>ye</i> v. <i>y</i>
<i>Thamesis</i> , the river Thames		<i>Atys</i> , <i>ys</i> Atys, <i>ym</i> v. <i>yn</i> , <i>ye</i> v. <i>y</i>
<i>Nemesis</i> , the goddess of revenge		

2. Greekish nouns in *is* of the masculine gender with the genitive in *is* or *os* impure make the accusative in *im* or *in*, and sometimes *idem*; as *Paris*, *Paridis* v. *Paridos*, *Parim* v. *Parin* et *Paridem*; but womens names in *is* or *ys*, only *idem* or *ida*, not *im* or *in*, as *Phyllis*, *Phyllidis* v. *idos*, Ac. *Phyllidem* v. *ida*, not *Phyllim* v. *in*; ³⁷ so *chlamys*, *chlamydem* v. *yda*, not *chlamyn*: Other feminines, as *Elis*, *Aulis*, *idis* v. *idos*, *idem* v. *iua*, et *im* v. *in*.

Obs. 3. Some proper names in *-es* make *-en*, *Tiridáten*, *Phraáten*, &c. others *-em* and *-en*, *Euphratem*, *-en*, &c. and sometimes throw away *s* in the vocative, as *Achille*, *Ulysse*. Such as have *a* in the accusative sing. may end in *as* in the accusative plur. *lampada*, *-as*.

4. 10 make the accusative in <i>im</i> , and the ablative in <i>i</i> .		
<i>amussis</i> a carpenter's rule	<i>im</i> , <i>i</i>	<i>mephitis</i> a sulphurous smell
<i>buris</i> a plow tail		<i>ravis</i> hoarseness
<i>cucumis</i> a cucumber		<i>sinapis</i> mustard
<i>magudaris</i> a kind of Laser-wort		<i>tussis</i> a cough
<i>fitis</i> thirst	<i>vis</i>	force, strength

2 make *im* or *in* in the accusative, and *i* or *e* in the ablative,

Baetis the river Baetis, *Bactim* v. *in*, *i* v. *e*.

Tygris the river Tygris, also a Tyger, *Tygrim* v. *in*, *i*, *e* v. *ide*; pl. *cannabis* hemp, makes *cannabim*, *cannabi* v. *cannabe*. (*tigr-es* et *ides*

5. 16 make the accusative in *em* or *im*, and the abl. in *e* or *i*.

aqualis	a water-pot, aqualem v.	ovis	a sheep
	(im, e v. i	pelvis	a basin
avis	a bird	puppis	a ship's stern
clavis	a key	securis	an ax
cratis	a hurdle	sementis	seed-time
febris	a fever	sentis	a thorn
lens	lentils	strigilis	a curry-comb
messis	harvest	turris	a tower
navis	a ship		

2 make *em* or *im* in the accusative, and *e* only in the ablative.

cutis the skin, *cutem* v. *cutim* -e; *reſtis* a halter, *reſtem* v. *im*, *reſte*.

For the ablative singular.

Obſ. 1. Nouns substantive ending in *al*, *ar* and *e* in the nominative, and adjectives in *is* and *er*, which make the neuter in *e*, make their ablative in *i*, as *veſtigal*, *calcar*, *mare*, ablat. *veſtigáli*, *ealcári*, *mari*: *fortis*, *acer*, ablat. *forti*, *acri*: Names of months in *is* and *er*, as *Aprilis*, *December*. ablat. *Aprili*, *Decembri*; ſo *veſtis* and *canális*. Except proper names in *e*, as *Soraete*, and theſe ſubſtantives following, *hepar*, *fur*, *jubar*, *nectar*, *par*, *compar*. *Note.* The Poets uſe *e* for *i*, as *mare* for *mari*.

2. Adjectives of one termination, as *felix*, and comparatives, as *melior*, make both *e* and *i*; as *felice* v. *felici*, *meliore* v. *meliori*, but neuters *i* only, as *viſtrici ferro*; as alſo *par* the adjective ſimple, and *memor*; *pari*, *memori*.

3. Compounds of *pes*, and participles uſed abſolutely always end in *e*, as *Regnante Romulo*; ſo theſe 11 following,

compos	partaker -te	pubes	marriageable
impos	unable	impubes	unripe of age
cocelebs	ſingle	ſolpes	ſafe and ſound
cognominis	of the ſame name	ſuperſtes	out-living
pauper	poor	tricuspis	with three points
princeps	principal		

4. 32 make *e*, and ſometimes *i*, with ſome old words, and poetical.

aestas	ſummer e et i	civis	a citizen
amnis	a ſtream	claffis	a ſhip: a navy
anguis	a ſnake	collis	a hill
bilis	choler: anger	ſinis	an end
			furfur

furfur	bran	orbis	a circle
fustis	a club	pars	a part
ignis	fire	postis	a post
imber	a shower	rus	the country
labes	a spot	seges	land : a crop
lapis	a stone	sodalis	a companion
lux	light	fordis	filth
mel	honey	fois	a lot
mens	the mind	supellex	furniture
mons	a mountain	tempus	time
mugil	a mullet	vesper	the evening
occiput	the noddle	unguis	a man's nail

For the Nominative and Genitive plural.

Obs. 1. Nouns that have *i* only, or *e* and *i* in in the ablative singular, have *ia* in the nom. and *ium* in the gen. plural, as *molli*, *duplice* v. *duplici*, nom. *molli* *duplicia*, gen. *mollium*, *duplicium*, but comparatives with *vetus* and *uber*, -*ra*, -*rum*.

2. Nouns that end in *e* only in the ablat. sing. make *um* in the gen. plural, as *leo*, *leone*, *leonum*. But nouns not increasing in the genitive, or ending with two consonants in the nom. sing. make *ium* in the gen. plural; as *collis*, *is*, *ium*; *urbs*, *is*, *ium*, and these 18 following.

as, affis	a pound, -ium	ma-s, ris	a male
bes, beffis	eight ounces	mu-s, ris	a mouse
co-r, rdis	the heart	ni-x, vis	snow
co-s, tis	a whetstone	no-x, ctis	night
cru-x, cis	a cross	os, offis	a bone
di-s, tis	rich	sa-l, les	jest
do-s, tis	a portion	va-s, dis	a surety
fau-x, cis	a jaw	Gentiles in as and is, ium	
gli-s, ris	a dormouse	Fiden-as, átis, ium	of Fidenae
la-r, ris	a house-god	Quir-is, ítis	a Roman
li-s, tis	a law-suit	And a few in the Ancients.	

Except words ending in *abs*, *ebs*, *eps*, *ops*, and these 24 which make the genitive plural in *um*.

accipiter, ris	a hawk, -um	dives	rich
apis	a bee	frater	a brother
canis	a dog or bitch	hyems	winter
cicur	tame	juvenis	young
confors	a partner	lynx	a beast called an ounce
degener	degenerate	mater	a mother
		O	memor

memor	mindful	phalanx	a squadron
immemor	unmindful	senex	old
mulgilis	a mullet	supplex	suppliant
panis	bread	vates	a prophet
parens	a parent	vigil	watchful
pater	a father	volucris	a bird

Note. ales a bird, makes alituum
bos an ox, boum, D. and Ab. bo-
tres tria trium (bus v. bubus
Some feasts -ium and -orum, as
(Saturnalia, ium et orum

plus more, plura et ia plurium
frugum from frux }
opum from ops } nom. out of use
precum from prex }

Obs. 3. When the gen. plural ends in -ium, the accus. plural may have *eis* or *is* for -es, as *omneis* or *omnis* for *omnes*.

IV. Declension.

Obs. 1. The genitive of the fourth declension is found in -uis, of which the present *us* is a contraction; and sometimes in *i*, as *ornati*, *tumulti*; the dative in *u*, as *parce metu* for *metui*.

2. 10 make the dat. and abl. plural in *ibus*; *acus*, *arcus*, *artus*, *ficus*, *lacus*, *portus*, *pecu*, *quercus*, *specus*, *tribus*. 4 make *ibus* and *ubus*; *portus*, *genu*, *questus*, *veru*.

3. Nouns of the fourth declension in -u are Aptotes in the sing. number.

S. N. hoc cornu, u, u, u, u, u; pl. corn-ua, uum, ibus, ua, ua, ibus.

Jesus makes *Jesum* in the accusative, the rest *Jesu*.

S. N. domus, G. dom-i v. us, D. dom-o v. ui, Ac. domum, V. us, Abl. domo;

Pl. N. dom-us, G. eum v. uum, D. -ibus, Ac. -os v. -us, V. -us, Abl. -ibus.

Peg. Tolle -me, -mu primo; -mi, -mis numeroque secundo.

V. Declension.

Obs. 1. The Gen. case sing. of the fifth declension is found in -es, *ii* and *e*, the Dat. in *e*.

2. The greatest part of nouns of the fifth declension have no case at all in the plural number. *Johnson*. *Res*, *acies*, *facies* and *dies* are entire: *Spes* and *species* are found plural in *Cicero* and *Virgil*; *eluvies*, in *Curtius*; *effigies*, in *Silius* and *Livy*; and *scabies* in *Catullus*.

3. Compounded nouns are to be declined in their simple parts; as, Nom. *respublica*, G. *reipublicae*, &c. but where one of them is a genitive, that genitive is not varied; as *jurisconsultus*, *jurisconsulti*; *paterfamilias*, *patrisfamilias*, &c.

ARTICLE XIV.

HETEROCLITES.

HETEROCLITES are such Nouns as differ from the common Way of declining, being either *Variant*, *Defective*, or *Redundant*.

1. *Variants* are such as pass from one Gender or Declension to
2. *Defectives* are such as want either Number or Case. (another.
3. *Redundants* are such as abound in the ending of the Nominative or Genitive.

§ 1. Variants are

1. That are masculine in the singular number, and neuter in the plural.

Maenalus, i	a hill in Arcadia, m.	Taenarus	a promontory in Laconia
	(pl. -a, n.	Massicus	a hill in Campania
Pangaeus	a mountain of Thrace	Avernus	a lake in Campania
Dindymus	a mountain of Phrygia	balteus	a belt
Ismarus	a mountain of Thrace	jocus	sport, m. pl. ci & ca, m. & n.
Tartarus	the deep, st place in Hell	locus	a place
Taygétus	a hill in Lacedaemonia		

2. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural.

Carbasus, i a sail, f. pl. sa, n. | Pergamus, i a fort of Troy; pl. ma, n.

3. Neuter in the singular, and varying in the plural.

fraenum, i	a bridle, n. pl. i & a, m.	nundinum, i	a fair, n. pl. -ae f.
	(and n.	epulum	a feast
rastrum	a rake	delicium	delight
plus, ris more n.	pl. -res m. & f. ran.	balneum	a bath, n. pl. -eae earum
caelum, i.	heaven n. pl. i m.		(and ea, eorum
Argos, eos	a city of Greece pl. gi m.		

§ 2. Defectives in Case are

1. Aptotes that have but one ending for every case.

fas	right, possible, invariab.	instar	likeness, bigness
nil, nihil	nothing	cepe	an onion
nonnulli	something	cujusmodi	of what sort
		hujus	

hujusmodi	of this sort	quot	how many
ejusmodi	of that sort	tot	so many
volupe	a pleasure	Cardinals from 3 to 100	
hippomanes	horse-poison	To these may be added	
mille <i>adj.</i>	a thousand		
pondo	a pound weight	epos	a poem
nequam	naughty	mily, -yos	vitriol <i>Plin.</i>
damnas	sentenced	moly	an excellent herb so called
expes	hopeless	nepenthes	an herb in <i>Pliny</i>
opus	need, needful	hir	the hollow of the hand
necesse	necessary	git	a small seed, gith
necessum }		frit	the little grain at the top of an
cornu	a horn		(ear of corn
genu	a knee	semi	half
gelu	frost	fesqui	as much and half as much
gummi	gum	Foreign names, as Jacob, Jerusa-	
frugi	thrifty	lem, Cherubim.	
Tempe	a pleasant vale in <i>Thessaly</i>		

Obs. All letters, words, and sentences that supply the place of nouns, may in that relation be declined invariably.

2. Monoptotes that have but one case.

noctu	by night	admissu	by access, admittance
natu	by birth	divitui	a dividing
inficias	a denial	ostentui	a spectacle
dicis	for form or fashion sake	promptu	in readiness
ergo	for the sake	jussu	by order
grates	thanks, <i>nom. and acc.</i>	injussu	without order or leave
ingratiis	without thanks	relatu	a relation or report
astu	the city of <i>Athens</i>	scriptu	the office of a secretary
accitu	by summons	sponsu	a bond or obligation, &c.

3. Diptotes that have but two cases or two endings in the singular number.

Verbals in *-um u* of the fourth declension called Supines.

plus <i>nom. & acc.</i> -ris <i>gen. pl.</i> -res	tantundem, -tidem	even so much
(-ra, -rium, &c. more	chaos, -o	a confused mass
repetundarum, -dis	nauci, -co	a nut-shell
sponsus, -te	compedis, -de	a shackle, <i>pl.</i> -des,
vesper, <i>e v. i</i>		(-dibus
impetis, -te	verberis, -re	a stripe; <i>pl.</i> -ra, &c.
suppetiac, -as	jugeris, re	an acre; <i>pl.</i> -ra, &c.
mille, <i>li subst.</i>		
a thousand; <i>pl.</i> -ia,		
(-ium, &c.		preci,

4. Triptotes that have only three cases in the singular, or three in both numbers.

preci, -cem, -ce	a prayer; pl. ces	dica, cam; pl. -cas	an action at law
	(&c.	fauce, pl -ces, -cibus	jaws
opis, -pēm, -pe	power, help; pl.	ambage, pl. -ges, -gibus	windings
	(opes, &c. riches		(and turnings
astus, -tu; pl. -tus	craft, subtilty	Verbals in -dum, -di, -do, of the second declension called Gerunds.	
mactus, -te; pl. -ti	full grown		

5. That want the vocative case; such are

Those nouns to which we cannot properly direct our speech; as

1. Negatives, as *nemo* nobody, *nullus* none.

2. Interrogatives, as *quis?* *ecquis?* *qualis?* *uter?*

3. Indefinites, as *aliquis* some one: Relatives, as *qui* who.

4. Words of general signification, as *omnis* all.

Obs. *Frugis* corn, and *Vicis* course or change, want both nom. and vocative.

§ 3. Defectives in Number are,

1. Plurals seldom;

1. Proper names, unless plural only, or expressing several of the same name; or parts of a country, as *Galliae*, *Hispaniae*; or some likenesses; as These are our Alexanders.

2. Sorts of grain, herbs, liquids, metals; Unctuous substances, as fat, wax, pitch, glue, &c.

Obs. But some of these may be plural, when parts are signified, as beans, waters, wines.

3. Diseases, virtues, vices, arts and ages of men are seldom plural.

4. Abstracted qualities, as *bonitas* goodness, *felicitas* happiness, *magnitudo* greatness.

5. All nouns of the fifth declension; but *res* and *dies* are entire.

Spes, *species*, *facies* and *acies* retain the three like cases in the plural.

2. Singulars only, though admitting a plural in sense.

mane	the morning	penum	food, victuals
salum	the salt sea	annona	provision of corn
diluculum	the dawn or day-break	vulgus	folk, a rabble
humus	the ground	plebs	the common people
			cectus

cestus	<i>a marriage-girdle</i>	pelagus	<i>the sea, -ge pl.</i>
pontus	<i>the sea</i>	fel	<i>gall</i>
aether	<i>the sky</i>	capital	<i>a priest's vail</i>
ver	<i>the spring</i>	salus	<i>health</i>
piper	<i>pepper</i>	pus	<i>matter, corruption</i>
album	<i>a list of names</i>	hilum	<i>the black of a bean</i>
tabum	<i>foul blood, poison</i>	abdomen	<i>the paunch</i>
folium	<i>a throne</i>	halec	<i>a sort of pickle</i>
filer	<i>an osier or small withy</i>	vis³⁸	<i>violence</i>
justitium	<i>vacation</i>	finus	<i>dung</i>
lethum	<i>death</i>	gelu	<i>frost</i>
jubar	<i>a sun-beam</i>	prolubium	<i>a delight, desire</i>
venia	<i>leav., pardon</i>	pedum	<i>a shepherd's crook</i>
supellex	<i>household goods</i>	meridies	<i>noon</i>
hesperus	<i>the evening star</i>	omasum	<i>a fat tripe</i>
vesper	<i>the evening</i>	hepar	<i>the liver</i>
mundus	<i>womens dress</i>	barathrum	<i>a dungeon</i>
virus	<i>poison</i>	veternus	<i>a lethargy</i>

³⁸ *Vis* for violence ~~only~~ the sing. for strength or firmness of body or courage, both sing. and plural. *Johnson.*

3. Plurals only.

1. The feasts of Deities are limited to the plural number only; as *Floralia* holy days and plays dedicated to *Flora* the goddess of flowers.

2. So also many names of cities and places, as *Athenae* the city of Athens.

3. The people of a country, as *Angli* the people of England, *Cares* the inhabitants of Caria, *Seres* the Chinese, *Indi* the people of India.

4. Add to these the titles of books, as *Georgica* Virgil's poem on husbandry, *Ethica* books of moral philosophy: and such as want the ~~plural~~ in sense.

4. Masculines never, or but seldom singular.

manes	<i>ghosts</i>	minores	<i>successors</i>
maiores	<i>ancestors</i>	pugillares	<i>writing-tables</i>
cancelli	<i>lattices</i>	superi	<i>the gods above</i>
posterii	<i>posterity</i>	inferi	<i>the gods below</i>
antes	<i>the fore ranks of vines</i>	sales	<i>jesters, repartees</i>
laurices	<i>young rabbits</i>	amores	<i>a sweet-heart</i>
lemures	<i>spectres</i>	triones	<i>plowing oxen</i>
fasti }	<i>calendars</i>	primores	<i>gentry</i>
fastus }			<i>Luceres</i>

Luceres	<i>a division of the Roman</i>	coelites	<i>gods or saints above</i>
tori	<i>(people</i>	fori	<i>the hatches of a ship</i>
Luperci	<i>bravny parts</i>	natales	<i>parentage</i>
	<i>the priests of Pan</i>	vepres	<i>briars</i>
		liberi	<i>children</i>
		indígetes	<i>gods made of men</i>
Penates	<i>household gods</i>	artus	<i>limbs</i>
proceres	<i>nobles</i>	primátes	<i>men of the first rank</i>
falces	<i>bundles of rods</i>	Quirítes	<i>Romans</i>

These seldom have the sing.

5. Feminines never, or but seldom singular.

Exuviae	<i>an enemy's spoils</i>	fortunae	<i>an estate</i>
induviae	<i>cloaths to put on</i>	vergiliae	<i>the seven stars</i>
gerrae	<i>idle stuff</i>	vindiciae	<i>assertion of liberty</i>
manubiae	<i>spoils in war</i>	tenebrae	<i>darkness</i>
idus	<i>the ides of a month</i>	lendes	<i>nits</i>
antiae	<i>a forelock</i>	flores	<i>the dregs or lees of wine</i>
induciae	<i>a truce</i>	fraces	<i>the lees of oil</i>
insidiae	<i>an ambush</i>	branchiae	<i>the gills of a fish</i>
minae	<i>threats</i>	nomae	<i>corroding sores</i>
excubiae	<i>watches, sentry</i>	facultates	<i>goods and chattels</i>
nonae	<i>the nones</i>	salinae	<i>salt pits</i>
nugae	<i>idle stories</i>	Sometimes read in the sing.	
tricae	<i>trifles</i>	Decimae	<i>tithes</i>
calendae	<i>the calends</i>	fores	<i>the door</i>
quisquiliae	<i>sweepings of a house</i>	praeestigiae	<i>juggling tricks</i>
thermae	<i>a hot bath</i>	salebrae	<i>rugged places</i>
cunae	<i>a cradle</i>	fauces	<i>the jaws</i>
scopae	<i>a besom</i>	literae	<i>an epistle</i>
exsequiae	<i>funerals</i>	aedes	<i>a house</i>
feriae	<i>holy days</i>	latebrae	<i>a hiding place</i>
inferiae	<i>sacrifices for the dead</i>	dirae	<i>curSES</i>
primitiae	<i>first fruits</i>	scalae	<i>a ladder</i>
plagae	<i>nets</i>	furiae	<i>the Furies</i>
nuptiae	<i>a marriage</i>	habénae	<i>the reins of a bridle</i>
lactes	<i>the small guts</i>	operae	<i>labourers</i>
valvae	<i>sliding doors</i>	Charites	<i>the Graces</i>
divitiae	<i>riches</i>	partes	<i>a side or party</i>
apinae	<i>geezaws</i>	scatebrae	<i>a spring</i>
phalerae	<i>horse-trappings</i>	bigae	<i>a chariot and pair</i>
clitellae	<i>a pack-saddle</i>	trigae	<i>a chariot with three horses</i>
reliquiae	<i>the remains of any thing</i>	quadrigae	<i>a chariot and four</i>
impuritiae	<i>villainies</i>		
opes	<i>wealth, riches</i>		

6. Neuters

6. Neuters never, or but seldom singular.

Moenia	<i>the walls of a city</i>	effata	<i>solemn prayers or speeches</i>
tesqua	<i>a rough place</i>	comitia	<i>an assembly of the people</i>
praecordia	<i>parts about the heart</i>	acta	<i>publick acts, records</i>
lustra	<i>dens of wild beasts</i>	Ceraunia	<i>hills in Epirus</i>
arma	<i>arms</i>	Gargara	<i>the top of mount Ida</i>
mapalia }	<i>Numidian cottages</i>	februa	<i>purifications</i>
magalia }		exta	<i>the bowels</i>
munia	<i>an office or charge</i>	crepundia	<i>childrens baubles</i>
castra	<i>a camp</i>	in-cunabula	<i>a cradle</i>
lautia }	<i>a present of provisions to embassadors</i>	biblia	<i>the bible</i>
rostra		transtra	<i>the seats of rowers</i>
bellaria	<i>junkets, dainties</i>	multicia	<i>garments finely wrought</i>
parapherna }	<i>what a wife brings besides her dowry</i>	talara	<i>Mercury's winged shoes</i>
brevia		catadupa	<i>the noisy falls of a river</i>
sponsalia	<i>espousals</i>	repotia	<i>a feast the day after a wed-</i>
ilia	<i>the intrails</i>		<i>(ding</i>
justa	<i>funeral rites</i>	donaria	<i>offerings</i>
principia	<i>the center of an army</i>	scruta	<i>old garments, lumber</i>
		flabra	<i>blasts of wind</i>

§ 4. Redundants (1) in the Nominative.

There are many words of the same signification with different endings.

Mend-um, a	<i>a fault</i>	Druid-ae, es	<i>Druids, priests of the</i>
cast-is, ida	<i>a helmet</i>		<i>(ancient Gauls</i>
clype-us, um	<i>a shield</i>	alluvi-o, es	<i>an inundation</i>
tonitr-us, u	<i>thunder</i>	levam-en, entum	<i>ease, comfort</i>
cong-er, rus	<i>a conger</i>	exempl-ar, are	<i>a copy, a model</i>
lani-us, o	<i>a butcher</i>	cep-a, e	<i>an onion</i>
hon-or, os	<i>honour</i>	tor-al, ale	<i>furniture of a bed</i>
lab-or, os	<i>labour</i>	ple-bs, bes	<i>the common people</i>
arb-or, os	<i>a tree</i>		
od-or, os	<i>a scent</i>	Many Verbals end in <i>io</i> and <i>us</i>, as	
ap-es, is	<i>a bee</i>	acti-o, us	<i>action, &c.</i>
pauper-tas, ies	<i>poverty</i>	Greek nouns end in <i>os</i> and <i>us</i>, as	
Lige-r, ris	<i>the Loir, a river of (France</i>	isthm-os, us	<i>a neck of land</i>
obsidi-um, o	<i>a siege, a blockade</i>	Some in <i>-os</i> and <i>on</i>, as	
sauri a, es	<i>brine, a strong pickle</i>	Abyd-os, on	<i>a city of Asia</i>
			Some

Some in *-on* and *um*, as
li-on, um the city of Troy
 Some from *-as* and *-es* make *a*, as
peltast-es, a one armed with a target
tiar-as, a a turban

Sciences end in *-e* or *a*, as
Grammatic-e, a Grammar
So ode and oda an ode

2. Redundant in the Genitive.

9 are of the 2d and 4th decl.

Laur-us, i et ūs a bay tree
pin-us, i et ūs a pine tree
fic-us, i et ūs a fig or fig tree
col-us, i et ūs a distaff
corn-us, i et ūs a cornel tree
querc-us, i et ūs an oak
cupress-us, i et ūs a cypress
dom-us, i et ūs a house
except-me, -mu sing. -mi, -mis pl.
senat-us, ūs et i a senate

6 are of the 1st and 3d decl.

diabēt-es, ae et is when one cannot
(hold one's water
cym-a, ae et atis a little shoot or
(sprout
pasch-a, ae et atis the passover
Boot-es, ac et is a northern con-
(stellation
Orest-es, ae et is a man's name

scem-a, ae et atis a habit, figure

5 are of the 2d and 3d decl.

Oedip-us, i et odis a king of Thebes
canc-er, rieteris a crab-fish: canker
polyp-us, i et odis many feet a fish:
(a disease
glom-us, i et eris a clue of thread
gibb-er, eri et eris a bunch

2 of the 3d and 5th.

requi-es, etis et ei rest
pleb-es, is et ci the commonalty

Varying in the 3d declension.

tud-es, is et itis a hammer, a mallet
ib-is, is et idis a kind of stork
Chrem-es, is et étis a man's name
So Dares, Eutyches, Laches,
Thales, and some others, but étis
is more usual.

12 Adjectives of the 3d Declension have 3 Terminations
 in the Nom. and Voc. singular.

M. F. N.	M & F. N.
<i>Campest-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or-pest-ris et re</i>
<i>voluc-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or voluc-ris et re</i>
<i>celeb-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or celeb-ris et re</i>
<i>cel-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or cel-eris et ere</i>
<i>ac-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or ac-ris et re</i>
<i>salúb-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or salúb-ris et re</i>
<i>sylvest-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or sylvest-ris et re</i>

M. F. N.	M. & F. N.
<i>alac-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or alac-ris et re</i>
<i>pedest-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or pedest-ris et re</i>
<i>equest-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or equest-ris et re</i>
<i>palust-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or palust-ris et re</i>
<i>sequest-er, ris, re</i>	<i>or sequest-ris et re</i>
<i>Also sequest-er, ra, rum indifferent</i> <i>(to both parties</i>	

P

From

From 8 Substantives are derived Adjectives ending both in *us* and *is*.

<i>Of arma</i>	inermis, e <i>et</i> inermus, a, um	<i>unarmed</i>
<i>Of jugum</i>	bijug-is, e <i>et</i> bijugus, a, um	<i>drawn by a couple</i>
<i>Of nervus</i>	enerv-is, e <i>et</i> enerv-us, a, um	<i>feeble</i>
<i>Of somnus</i>	femifomnis, e <i>et</i> femifomnus, a um	<i>half asleep</i>
<i>Of clivus</i>	acclivis, e <i>et</i> acclivus, a, um	<i>steep rising</i>
<i>Of animus</i>	exanimis, e <i>et</i> exanimus, a, um	<i>dispirited, dead</i>
<i>Of traenum</i>	effraenis, e <i>et</i> effraenus, a, um	<i>unruly</i>
<i>Of bacillum</i>	imbecillis, e <i>et</i> imbecillus, a, um	<i>weak</i>

¶ Some Words less frequent excepted from the Rule to know the Genitive of the third Declension, ART. III.

al-ex, écis	<i>a kind of fish</i>	ony-x, chis	<i>the name of a precious</i>
al-ec, écis	<i>a sort of pickle</i>		<i>(stone)</i>
bif-on, ontis	<i>a wild ox</i>	ory-x, gis	<i>a wild goat</i>
cel-es, étis	<i>a race-horse: yacht</i>	ort-yx, gis	<i>plantane</i>
chlam-ys, ydis	<i>a cloak</i>	perp-es, etis	<i>perpetual</i>
coccy-x, gis	<i>a cuckow</i>	phalan-x, gis	<i>a regiment</i>
foenif-ex, ecis	<i>a mower</i>	poll-is, inis	<i>fine flower</i>
harpa-go, gónis	<i>a grapple</i>	rhinocer-os, ótis	<i>a beast with a</i>
indig-es, etis	<i>one deified</i>		<i>(horn on his snout)</i>
lagóp-us, odis	<i>a dainty bird, with</i>	si-phén, phónis	<i>a cock or pipe</i>
	<i>(rough feet like a hare)</i>	spa-do, dónis	<i>an eunuch</i>
laryn-x, gis	<i>the wind-pipe</i>	stri-x, gis	<i>a screech-owl</i>
man-go, gónis	<i>a trader in slaves</i>	trip-us, odis	<i>a three-footed stool</i>
maſti-x, chis	<i>maſtick</i>		<i>(or pot)</i>
menin-x, gis	<i>a film incloſing the</i>	So apus, polypus, &c.	
	<i>(brain)</i>	unc-do, dónis	<i>the fruit of a crab-</i>
merg-es, itis	<i>a gripe of corn</i>		<i>(tree)</i>

¶ Proper Names.

Acher-on, ontis	<i>a river of hell</i>	Apoll-o, inis	<i>the god of wiſdom</i>
Aegocer-os, ótis	<i>the ſign of Ca-</i>	Arc-as, adis	<i>an Arcadian</i>
	<i>(pricorn)</i>	Bibra-x, étis	<i>the Town Bray in</i>
Allobro-x, gis,	<i>a Savoyard</i>		<i>(France)</i>
Amath-us, untis	<i>a city of Cyprus</i>	Cer-es, eris	<i>the goddeſs of corn</i>
Ani-o, énis	<i>a river of Italy</i>	Char-is, itis	<i>one of the Graces</i>
			Char-on,

Char-on, ontis <i>the ferry-man of hell</i>	Phorc-ys, ynis <i>the father of the</i> (Gorgons)
Colo-phon, phónis <i>a city of Ionia</i>	Phry-x, gis <i>a Phrygian</i>
Cr-es, etis <i>one of Crete</i>	Polyserch-on, ontis <i>a man's name</i>
Eleuf-is, ínis <i>a city of Attica</i>	Pyro-is, entis <i>Fiery, one of Phoe-</i> (bus's horses)
Emma-us, untis <i>a city of Judéa</i>	Quir-is, ítis <i>a Roman</i>
Hydr-us, untis <i>a river of Italy</i>	Salam-is, ínis <i>an Island near Athens</i>
Hyla-x, etis <i>Barker a dog's name</i>	Samn-is, ítis <i>a people of Italy</i>
Japy-x, gis <i>a westerly wind</i>	Selin-us, untis <i>a town in Sicily</i>
Jupiter, Jovis <i>the supreme god of</i> (the heathens)	Simo-is, entis <i>a river of the lesser</i> (Phrygia)
Lele-x, gis <i>one of Caria</i>	Sphin-x, gis <i>a she-monster infesting</i> (the road to Thebes)
Lig-us, uris <i>one of Liguria</i>	Sty-x, gis <i>a river of Hell</i>
Mace-do, donis <i>a Macedonian</i>	Syrin-x, gis <i>the nymph Syrinx</i>
Min-os, óis <i>a king of Crete</i>	Tiry-ns, nthis <i>a city of Argos</i>
My-us, untis <i>a city of Ionia</i>	Trach-ys, ynis <i>a city of Thessaly</i>
Oedip-us, odis <i>a king of Thebes</i>	Trapez-us, untis <i>a city of Cappa-</i> (docia)
Op-us, untis <i>a city of Locris</i>	Tr-os, ois <i>a Trojan</i>
Pessin-us, untis <i>a town in Phrygia</i>	Ucaleg-on, ontis <i>a man's name</i>
Phaeth-on, ontis, <i>the rash son of</i> (Phoebus)	
Phlegeth-on, ontis <i>a burning ri-</i> (ver of hell)	

ARTICLE XV.

DIRECTIONS for making LATIN.

1. Distinguish the Parts of Speech; then,

Substantives have	{ Number by the English, Case by a Sign with or without a Particle, ³⁹ Gender by the Signification, or Ending in Latin Declension by the ending of the Nominative.
Adjectives have	{ Number, Case and Gender by the Substantive. Declension by the ending of the Nominative.
Verbs have	{ Voice, Mood and Tense by the English. Number and Person by the Nominative. Conjugation by the Latin.

³⁹ Particles or the signs of cases of a noun in english are *of, to, for, in, at, on, with, from, by, and than.*

2. Make

2. Make by the Signs of Cases, Degrees, Moods, Tenses and Persons ; but

Obs. The signs must be governed by the sense, by Syntax, and by synonymous words. *Signa regas sensu, syntaxi, synonymisque.*

E. G. He heard of me: The sign *of* cannot be made by the genitive, as by Syntax it follows only the force of a noun ; but the sense thereof being express'd by the synonymous word *concerning* directs you to *de* ; *Audivit de me.* So *that*, when it may be turned into *who* or *which* is rendered by *qui* ; as, The man is wise *that* or *who* speaketh few words ; *Vir sapit, qui, pauca loquitur.* Otherwise it is a conjunction grammatically express'd in Latin by *quod* or *ut*, and may elegantly be left out by making the grammatical nominative the accusative, and the verb the infinitive mood ; as, I am glad that you are well, *Gaudeo, quod tu bene vales,* or *Gaudco te benè valère* : I command that you go hence, *Jubeo, ut tu abeas,* or *te abire.*—*That*, when joined with a substantive, is made by *ille, iste, is.*

3. Put in order words transposed and supply words ellipted or understood,

As, *Whom* do you look for ? *i. e.* for whom do you look ; so *Where-at*, *-by*, *-in*, *-of*, *-with*, &c. *i. e.* at, by, in, of, with which. So *Here-at*, *-by*, &c. *i. e.* at, by, this or these. *Pardon me* and (pardon) *my friend.* *What* do you see ? (I see) *a book.* *The pen* (which) *you promised me,* &c. Sometimes the verb or adjective is followed by a particle which is included in the signification of the latin verb or adjective, and has no latin word made for it ; as, He despairs-of life, *Despérat vitam.* In the midst-of winter, *mediâ hyeme.*

4. After *meus, tuus, suus, nosler, vester*, the genitive of their primitives *mei, tui, sui, nostri, &c.* are elegantly left out, and yet the adjectives agreeing with them are express'd ; as, 'Twas my fault alone, *Fuit meum (mei) solius peccatum.*

5. The English word *to have*, which may grammatically be made by *habeo*, is elegantly made by *sum* in the third person, the word that seems in English to be the nominative being made the dative, and the accusative the nominative ; as, I have money, *Ego habeo pecuniam*, is grammatical, *Est mihi pecunia* more elegant.

6. The grammatical nominative after *sum, do, dono, duco, habeo, tribuo, verto, &c.* is elegantly put in the dative ; as, *Sum tibi praesidium*, is grammatical, *Sum tibi praesidio*, is elegant : *Hoc ducis tibi laudem*, is grammatical, *hoc ducis tibi laudi*, elegant.

7. The

7. The particles *whilst, when, if, tho', since, after that, before* a nominative and a verb, may oftentimes elegantly be left out in latin, by turning the substantive into the ablative, and the verb into a participle agreeing with it; as, *Whilst Augustus reigned, Dum imperabat Augustus*, is grammatical, *Imperante Augusto*, elegant. *Postquam legisset literas*, or *lectis literis*.

8. *Must* or *ought* may elegantly be made by the gerund in *dum* with *est*, instead of *debeo* or *oportet*; as, *I must go hence, Abeundum est mihi*, instead of *debeo* or *oportet me abire*.

9. A Gerund having a substantive after it, is elegantly changed into a participle in *dus* agreeing with that substantive; as, *You profit by reading the ancients, Proficis legendo veteres*, is grammatical, *Proficis legendis veteribus*, is elegant.

<i>Grammatical.</i>	<i>Elegant.</i>	<i>Grammatical.</i>	<i>Elegant.</i>
Dum pugnant	Inter pugnandum	Tam bene quam possum	
Haec res	Hoc		Quantum possum
Et igitur	Proinde, ideoque	Talis doctus	Tam doctus
Et non	Nec non, autem	Singulariter	Haud vulgariter
Et nemo	Nec quisquam	Vel aliter	Alioqui
Et nihil	Nec quicquam	Valde gratum	Haud ingratum
Ut non	Ne	Dixit quod noluit	Negavit
Ut nullus	Ne quis	Ubique	Nusquam non
Ut nihil	Ne quid	Semper	Nunquam non
Ut nolles	Ne velles	Et nunquam	Nec unquam
Sed si	Sin autem	Et nusquam	Nec usquam
Si non	Nisi	Et ille, Et is	Qui
Tam multum	Tantum	Et tamen non	Nec tamen
Quam multum	Quantum	Et si non	Sin minus, &c.

OF FIGURATIVE SYNTAX.

SYNTAX is either *Plain* or *Figurative*.

Plain Syntax teaches to join words, as the *Classic writers* have done in *full sentences*, where no word is wanting to compleat the *construction*.

Figurative Syntax teaches to imitate the *concise manner* of the *Classics*, in sentences, where, for readiness of expression, or elegance, some word necessary to a full construction is dropt; or where they depart from their own *Idiom*, and follow that of another language.

Every

Every *nominative*¹ case in a sentence, hath its own *finite verb* express'd or understood. Every *adjective*² hath its own *substantive*, with which it agrees, express'd or understood. Every *finite verb* hath its own *nominative* express'd or understood.

The *nominative* comes before the verb; the *genitive*³ the latter of two substantives; the *dative*⁴ after the verb by acquisition; the *accusative*⁵ after a verb transitive, or governed of a preposition express'd or understood; the *ablative*⁶ governed of a preposition express'd or understood.

The Figures of Grammar are three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasmus*, and *Enallage*. *Ellipsis* denotes a deficiency of words; *pleonasm* a redundancy; *Enallage* a change of words, and their accidents, for one another.

1. *These sentences are elliptical.* O festus dies hominis? by *Ellipsis*, O quam est, &c. Heu pietas! *Ellip.* Heu quanta est pietas. Quis est in Scholâ? *Praeceptor, Ellip.* est in Scholâ. Ego illud negare factum, *Ellip.* coepi. Aurum vilius est quam virtutes, *Ellip.* sunt.

2. Mortalis, *Ellip.* homo. October, *Ellip.* mensis. Oriens et Occidens, *Ellip.* Sol. Altum *vel* profundum, *Ellip.* mare. Laborat tertianâ, *Ellip.* febre. Paucis te volo, *Ellip.* verbis colloqui. Est illi a secretis, *Ellip.* consiliis servus. Meum est, *Ellip.* officium. Omnia, *Ellip.* negotia. Interest mea, *Ellip.* officia, negotia, *or* opera. Vendidit equum minimo, *Ellip.* pretio, &c. Ubi ad Dianae veneris, *Ellip.* templum.

3. Paulum pecuniae, *a little matter of money; Ellip.* negotium *or* pondus. Hoc noctis, *Ellip.* tempore. Avidus gloriae, peritus belli, amans patriae, *Ellip.* de re, causâ gratiâ. Unus, alter, senior, humanissimus sapientum, *Ellip.* ex numero. Hoc pecus est Melibœi, *Ellip.* Hoc pecus est pecus Melibœi. Est regis; interest omnium; refert populi, *Ellip.* officium. Pudor parvi penditur; me pili aestimat, *Ellip.* pretio. Boni consulo, *Ellip.* in loco. Accusat eum furti, *Ellip.* de crimine. Is rerum suarum satagit, *sc.* agit sat rerum. Miserere laborum, *Ellip.* dolori. Datae fidei reminiscitur; obliviscitur, *Ellip.* verba. Potiti sunt armorum, *Ellip.* spolium. Poenitet me peccati, *Ellip.* commissio. Taedet me vitae, *Ellip.* afflictio. Commune animantium, *Ellip.* naturae. Areae latae pedum denum, *Ellip.* ad mensuram. Plenus *or* implentur vini, *Ellip.* copiâ *vel* liquore. Tanti valet, *Ellip.* tanti aeris pretio. Eget defensionis, *Ellip.* in re. Discrucior animi, *Ellip.* dolore. Quid Romae faciam, *Ellip.* in urbe. Domi bellicae simul viximus, *Ellip.* in re *or* loco. Crurum tenuis, *Ellip.* ad altitudinem.

4. In english the signs *to* or *for* are often understood, and yet the force of acquisition plainly appears; as, Similis patri, *like his father*, Dedit mihi librum, *He gave me a book*. Promitto hoc tibi,

I pro-

I promise you this. Crede mihi, *Trust me.* Est mihi, *I have.* Respondet votis, huic succurro, imperat aut servit cuique, obtemperat patri, occurrere morbo. Sum tibi praesidio, Verto tibi vitio, Do tibi laudi, *Ellip.* pro; as laudi may be the ancient ablative in e or i. Amatus, amandus omnibus, *Ellip.* ab. Auditus, memorandus mihi, *Poeticè.* Discede peritis, *Ellip.* a or ex. Nutritus Thebis, *Ellip.* in. Exosus Deo, *Ellip.* a or ex. Luci laborandum, *Ellip.* in, &c.

5. Schola lata sex ulnas, Schola patet sex ulnas, *Ellip.* ad or per. Liber valet sex solidos, *Ellip.* ad. Manebit totam hyemem, *Ellip.* per. Ibat Londinum, redit domum, *Ellip.* ad. Heu stirpem invisam, *Ellip.* perde. Proh deum atque hominum fidem, *Ellip.* appello ad. Pridie calendas, *Ellip.* ante. Rogo patrem pecuniam, *Ellip.* ut det mihi pecuniam. Doceo te literas, *Ellip.* secundum, or quod ad literas. Induit se calceos, *Ellip.* in se, &c.

6. Vir nulla fide, *Ellip.* cum or de. Opus est nobis auctoritate, *Ellip.* in auctoritate: Viginti minis usus est filio, *Ellip.* in minis: Opus and usus being properly substantives. Aurum vilius virtutibus, *Ellip.* prae. Dies triginta et plus eo in navi fui, *Ellip.* prae eo spatio. Plenus vino, abundans amore, pallidus ira, *Ellip.* cum. Schola lata ulnis tribus, Schola patet ulnis tribus, *Ellip.* a, ab or in. Dignus es odio, *Ellip.* de. Virtute praeditus, *Ellip.* cum. Virgo prognata bonis parentibus, *Ellip.* a, ab or ex. Potiti sunt armis, *Ellip.* spoliū in armis. Georgius regnat Dei gratia, *Ellip.* a gratia. Vendidit librum duobus solidis, *Ellip.* pro. Fungitur magistratu, *Ellip.* functionem in magistratu. Fruitur vita, *Ellip.* fruitionem in vita. Utor libris, *Ellip.* usum in or de libris. N. B. In ancient writers fungor, fruor, utor, vescor, are used with an accusative; Vescor carnibus, *Ellip.* stomachum cum. Rege veniente hostes fugerunt, *Ellip.* a rege. Imperante Augusto, *Ellip.* sub. Discessit Londino, Vitium crescit tegendo, surgit cubitu, *Ellip.* a, ab, or e. Nemo sapit omnibus horis, *Ellip.* in, &c.

II. PLEONASM. Magis beatior, *Virg.* Bellum quo bello obiit, *Caes.* Id propter ea nunc venientem sequor, *Ter.* Pugnam pugnare, Vitam vivere, Oculis vidi, &c.

III. ENALLAGE. A subst. for an adjunct. nemo homo. An adjunct. for a subst. pauper for pauper homo, medentes for medici. A verb for a subst. scire tuum nihil est, for scientia tua. A verb for an adverb agere, amabere. An adverb for a preposition, proximè muros. A preposition for an adverb, Coram, quem quaeritis adsum, &c.

Note. Thus the learner may be let into the mysteries of his syntax, and instructed in the grounds of its rules, as soon as his capacity and acquirements will permit, by shewing him how to perfect latin sentences in his parsing, by supplying what is left out or understood, and also how they may be dilated and analys'd in turning English into Latin.

DIRECTIONS for Construing LATIN.

A Memorial Verse.

(1) Ad. Con. Voc. (2) Nom. et sua. (3) Verbum Dependensque.

In English.

Take Adverb or Conjunction first—if none
 The Vocative, if there be one, comes on ;
 Then find the Nominative case, and what
 Agrees, or is dependent upon that ;
 Then Verb—Th' Accusative's⁴⁰ the next in place,
 And then in order ev'ry other case.

EXCEPTION.

The Relative doth break this rule, and will
 Be construed where you find it, and doth still
 Precede the word that governs it :—this right
 Claim nouns of asking, and indefinite.

This Rule may be explained thus ; First find the principal verb in the period by reading it distinctly, and attending to the scope and sense of the author ; next make the verb ask the Question Who? or What? the answer will be the Nominative case. Then proceed thus ;

1. Begin with the adverb of asking conjunction causal or illative, and vocative case, if there be any

2. Next construe the nom. case, with what belongs to it, or depends upon it ; as Genitive cases, Adjectives, Relatives, and Participles, with what explains 'em, or depends on 'em.

3. Then the Verb with the Adverbs that explain it, and the Moods or Cases that follow it, and those that depend on it ; whether by force of Adjectives, Relatives, Participles or Prepositions express or understood.

N. B. Considering the genius of the English tongue, it may sometimes be more natural to construe the member which is not principal, first ; as, *Cum videris amicum nostrum, salutem ei dices verbis meis.* So in Conditional sentences, the Consequent may generally be construed first ; as, *Si id facis, hodie me periculum vides.*

⁴⁰ The infinitive mood is taken after a verb finite, like an accusative case.

AN EXAMPLE.

Quocirca, toties violatae fidei, quam dederant nebulones, in-
commoda satis expertus, juvenis optimus, senis integerrimi filius,
hominem, qui deserto vadimonio, illum sefellerat, obtortâ gula in
jus abreptum pessundedit; et mihi nihil quicquam poscenti, vestem
purpuream, sua ipsius manu, prolixo libentique animo, te, Tulli,
præsentem, pignori dedit. *Construed thus, Quocirca, Tulli, juvenis,*
&c.

ARTICLE XVI.

The Examples of the English Syntax construed, with the
radical or first Words, especially of the *Nouns* and
Verbs, annexed; except where the *first Word* stands
in the *Rule* or *Example*, or in the *Introduction*, and
sometimes where the Root is very obvious or easily
known.

The first CONCORD.

Ego voco *I call*. Tu ludis *you play*.—ludo. Praeceptor *the*
master legit *reads*—lego. Si *if* dixeris *you say*—dico. Sudat *he*
sweats—sudo. Tu *you (are)* solus amicus *my only friend*. Ego sum
I am amator *a lover* ruris *of the country*, tu *you* urbis *of the city*—rus,
urbs. Taedet me *I am weary* vitae *of life*—Taedet *impers.* ego,
vita. Gaudeo *I am glad* te *that you* rediisti *are returned*: Gaudeo
I am glad quod *that* tu rediisti *you are returned*—redeo *as eo*. Volo
I desire te *that you* agere *would act* fabulam *a comedy*. id est *that is*,
ut *that* tu agas *you would act*—ago.

The second CONCORD.

Rara avis *an uncommon bird*—rarus. Pectora mea *my breast* non
fensérunt *has not felt* hoc vulnus *this wound*—pectus, sentio. Nullus
amicus *no friend* ibit *will go* ad amissas opes *to a lost estate*—eo,
amittor, opes *pl.*

The third CONCORD.

Est *he is* vir bonus *a good man*, qui *who* servat *keeps* consulta *the*
decrees patrum *of the senators*—sum, servo, consultum, pater. Meum
Q (mei)

(mei) peccatum *my offence, or the offence of me* solius *alone*—meus, ego, solus. Tuus (tui) ipsius animus *your own mind*. Suus (sui) cuiusque laus *every one's own praise*—quisque. Noster (nostrum) duorum eventus *the event of us two*—ego, duo.

EXCEPTIONS.

Turba *the croud* ruunt *rushes or rush on*—ruo. Pars maxima *the greatest part (were)* caesi *slain*—caedor. Si *if* tu *you* et *and* pater *your father* valētis *are well*, ego *I* et mater *and my mother*, qui *who* sumus *are* domi *at home*, erimus *shall be* laeti *glad*—valeo, domus, laetus, sum. Mentiri *to lie or lying* non est *is not* meum (negotium) *my business or way*—mentior, meus. Didicisse *to have learnt* artes *the sciences* fideliter *thoroughly* emollit *softens* mores (mens) *manners*—disco, ars, emollio, mos. Quod *what* isti *those (men)* putant *think* fortunatum (negotium) *a happy thing*, nunquam habui *I never had* uxorem *a wife*—qui, ille, puto, fortunatus, habeo, uxor. Omnia (loca) *all (places)* erat *was* pontus *sea*—omnis, locus. Omnis error *every mistake* non est *is not* dicenda *to be called* stultitia *folly*—dicor. Globus *the globe* quæ *which* dicitur *is called* terra *the earth*—qui, dicor.

CASE of the RELATIVE.

Vir *the man* sapit *is wise* qui *who* loquitur *speaks* pauca (verba) *few words*—sapio, loquor, paucus, verbum. Noli amare *do not love* divitias *riches*, quod *which* est *is* sordidissimum *the basest* omnium *of all things*—nolo, amo, divitiae *pl.* sordidus, omnis. Utor *I use* libris *the books*, quos *which* habeo *I have*—liber, qui. Cujus numen *whose deity* adoro *I adore*. Quorum optimum *the best of which* ego habeo *I have*—qui, bonus. Cui similem *whose like* non vidi *I never saw*—similis, video. Prae quo *in comparison of whom* caeteri *the rest* sordent *are little worth*—qui, caeter *v.* caeterus, sordeo. Hei mihi *ah me*, qualis *what an one* erat *was he?* Erat *he was* talis *such an one* qualem *as* nunquam vidi *I never saw*—qualis, video.

CONSTRUCTION of SUBSTANTIVES.

Amor *the love* nummi *of money* crescit *increases*—nummus, cresco. Domus *the house* patris *of my father*; paterna domus *my father's house*—pater, paternus. Herus tibi *your master*, mihi pater *my father*—tu ego. Sapiens (homo) *the wise man* solus *only* est *is* dives *rich*. Multi (homines) *many men* loquuntur *speak* multa (negotia) *many things*—multus, loquor. Paululum (negotium) *a very little (matter)* pecuniae *of money*—paululus, pecunia. Hoc (tempus) *this time* noctis *of night*—hic, nox. Ubi *when* veneris *you*

you come ad Dianae to *Diana's*, ito turn ad dextram to the right—venio, Diana, co, dextra. Pater meus *my father* vir a man amat loves me me puerum a child—puer. Vir a man nullâ fide of no integrity—nullus, fides. Puer a boy ingenui vultûs of an ingenuous aspect—ingenuus, vultus. Opus need est is nobis to us, or we have need, auctoritate tuâ of your authority—ego, auctoritas, tuus. Usus need est is discipulo to a scholar, or a scholar hath need multis libris of many books—discipulus, multus, liber. Dux a leader et auctor and an adviser est is opus necessary nobis for us.

ADJECTIVES with a GENITIVE CASE.

Avidus fond novitatis of novelty—novitas. Praescius foreknowing futuri what is to come—sum. Esto be memor mindful brevis aevi of a short life, or the shortness of it—sum, brevis, aevum. Timidus afraid lucis of the light—lux. Rudis ignorant literarum of letters—litera. Immemor unmindful mandati of the command—mandatum. Reus accused furti of theft—furtum. Audax bold ingenii in nature—ingenium. Tempus time edax a devourer rerum of all things—res. Utrum whether horum of these?—uter, hic. Quisquis whoever deorum of the gods—deus. Fortior the stronger manuum of the hands—fortis, manus. Doctissimus the most learned poëtarum of the poets—doctus, poëta. Tres three fratrum of the brothers—tres pl. hi et hae tres haec tria, gen. trium, &c. frater. Primus the first regum of the kings—rex. Nigrae lanarum black wool—niger, lana. Nemo no one mortalium of mortals, or no mortal—mortalis. Tertius the third ab Aenêâ from Aenêas—Aenêas. Alter the one e vobis of you—tu. Solus be only de superis of the gods above—superi pl. Doctissimus the most learned ex poëtis of the poets, vel or interpoëtas among the poets—doctus. Primus the first inter omnes among them all—omnis. Primus ante omnes the first of all. Secundus inferior nulli to none—nullus. Quarum rerum of what things est is there nulla satietas no fulness? Divitiarum of riches—quis, res, divitiae pl. Quid rerum what (affairs) geritur are carrying on? consulitur they are consulting—quis, res, geror, consulitur imperf. Ne whether accusas do you accuse furti of theft, an or homicidii of murder? Utroque of both—accuso, furtum, homicidium, uterque. Cujus whose est is hic codex this book? Meus mine—quis.

ADJECTIVES with a DATIVE CASE.

Sis be bonus kind tuis to your friends—sum, tuus. Inimicus averse quieti to ease—quies. Aequalis equal Hectori to Hector—Hector. Color the colour contrarius contrary albo to white—albus. Jucundus pleasant amicis to his friends—amicus. Supplex submissive omnibus

to all—omnis. Proximus nearest tibi to you. Conservus mihi a fellow servant with me.

Par like hujus this man. Affines partakers harum rerum of these things—affinis, res. Similis like domini his master. Communis common, alienus strange, immunis free: Est it is commune common animantium omnium to all living creatures—animans f. vel n. rar. m. Mors death est is communis common omnibus to all. Non aliena not unfit consilii for the design—consilium. Alienus an enemy ambitioni to ambition—ambitio. Non alienus not averse a studio to study studium. Natus born, commodus convenient, incommodus inconvenient, utilis useful, inutilis useless, vehementis earnest, aptus fit, idoneus suitable: Natus born ad gloriam for glory—gloria. Pronus prone ad iram to anger—ira. Flebilis or flendus to be lamented omnibus of or by all men. Formidabilis or formidandus to be feared hosti by his enemy—hostis.

ADJECTIVES with an ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Altus high septem pedes seven feet—pes. Latus broad pedibus tribus three feet—pes, tres. Longus long pedum quinquaginta fifty feet.

ADJECTIVES with an ABLATIVE CASE.

Plenus full nummorum v. nummis of money—nummus. Expers void fraudis v. fraude of deceit—fraus. Pallidus pale irâ with anger. Facies a face pallida pale miris modis in a wonderful manner—pallidus, mirus, modus. Est it is carum dear asse at a penny—carus, as. Venale to be purchased auro with gold—venalis, aurum. Dignus worthy, indignus unworthy, praeditus endued, captus disabled, contentus content, extorris banished, fretus relying upon: Dignus worthy odio of hatred—odium. Praeditus endued virtute with virtue—virtus. Captus deprived oculis of sight—oculus. Contentus content sorte sua with his lot—sors, suus. Argentum silver est is vilius of less value auro than gold, id est that is, quam than aurum gold—vilis. Tanto by so much, quanto or quo by how much, eo by so much: Quanto by how much doctior the more learned es you are, sis be tanto by so much: submissior the more submissive.

CONSTRUCTION OF PRONOUNS.

Amor the love tui of thee—tu. Amor tuus thy love. Petrus Peter admiratur admires se himself nimium too much—admiror, sui. Johannes John diligit loves Petrum Peter et and fratrem suum his brother, i. e. that is, fratrem the brother ipsius Johannis of the same John—diligo, frater, suus. Alexander ille magnus the great Alexander.

ander. Ille homuncio that pitiful little fellow. Agricola the husbandman et and pastor the shepherd differunt differ; ille the former sperat expects fructum advantage e terrâ from the earth, hic the latter e pecore from his cattle—differo, spero, fructus, terra, pecus.

VERBS with a NOMINATIVE CASE.

Deus God est is summum bonum the chief good—superus, bonus. Perpusilli very little men vocantur are called nani dwarfs—perpusillus, nanus. Natura nature dedit hath granted omnibus to all esse to be beati happy—do, omnis, beatus. Hypocrita an hypocrite cupit desires se videri that he may seem justum righteous—cupio, justus. Pii pious men orant pray taciti silently—pius, oro, tacitus. Malus pastor a bad shepherd dormit sleeps supinus with his face upwards—dormio. Somnias thou dreamest vigilans waking—somnia.

VERBS with a GENITIVE CASE.

Pecus the cattle est is Melibœi Melibœus's. Errare to mistake est is the property cujusvis hominis of any man—erro, quivis, homo. Est it is the duty adolescentis of a young man revereri to reverence majores his elders—adolescens, revereor, majores pl. Haec domus this house est is vestra yours. Mentiri to lye non est is not meum my property—mentior. Est it is tuum thy duty pati to suffer omnia all things juxta alike—patior. Accusat he accuses alterum another probri of dishonesty—accuso, alter, probrum. Absolutus est he is acquitted furti of theft—absolvor, furtum. Condemnabo I will condemn te you eodem crimine of the same crime—condemno, idem, crimen. Admonui te I have put you in mind de eâ re of that matter—admoneo, is, res. Accusas do you accuse furti of theft, an or stupri of dishonesty, an utroque or of both? live or de utroque of both—stuprum, uterque. Accusaris you are accused de plurimis of very many things—accusor, multus. Satagit he is busy about rerum suarum his own affairs. Miserere pity laborum our distresses—miseror, labor. Reminiscitur he remembers datae fidei, v. datam fidem his promise—fides. Obliviscitur he forgets vitiorum suorum, v. vitia sua his own vices—vitium. Memento remember hujus diei, v. hunc diem this day—dies. Memini I spake de te of you—inemini def. Romani the Romans potiti sunt gained armorum the arms—Romani pl. potior, arma pl. Troës the Trojans potiuntur get to arenâ shore.

VERBS with a DATIVE CASE.

Non dormio I sleep not omnibus to all men. Seris you sow tibi for yourself, etiam and metis you reap tibi for yourself—sero, meto.

Non

Non potes you cannot commodare be of service mihi to me—possum, comodo. Umbrae shadows nocent hurt frugibus the corn—umbra, noceo, nom. et voc. caret, gen. frugis, dat. frugi, &c. Quies rest plurimum juvat very much delights fessum a wearied man—fessus. Ah alas (I am afraid) ne lest frigora the cold laedant should hurt te you—frigus, laedo. Cur why offendam should I offend amicum my friend—offendo. Solebam I used componere to compare magna great things parvis with small—soleo, compono, magnus, parvus. Comparatur he is compared cum illo with him, vel or ad illum to him—comparor, ille. Fortuna fortune dedit has given nimium too much multis to many—do, multus. Redde restore mihi me librum my book—reddo, ego, liber.—Promitto I promise tibi you hoc this. Numeravit he paid mihi me aes alienum the debt—numero. Crede trust mihi me—credo. Imperat he commands liberis his children—impero, liberi pl. Cave be careful cui to whom dicas you speak it—caveo, qui, dico. Pius filius a dutiful son obtemperat obeys patri his father—obtempero, pater. Fortuna fortune repugnat opposes ignavis precibus sluggish prayers—repugno, ignavus, pre-ci -cem -ce Tript. pl. -ces, &c. Minatus est he threatened mortem death utri-que to both—minor, mors, uterque. Succenset he is angry adolescenti with the young man—succenseo, adolescens. Rex pius a pious king est is ornamentum an ornament reipublicae to the state—respublica. Nec obest it neither hurts nec prodest nor profits mihi me—obsum, prosum. Praeluxit he outshone majoribus his ancestors—praeluceo, majores pl. Hoc this accessit was added meis malis to my misfortunes—accedo, malum. Convixit he lived with nobis us—convivo. Subolet it is smelt out uxori by my wife, or my wife has a jealousy—suboleo, uxor. Antefero I prefer pacem peace bello to war—pax, bellum. Postpono I postpone pecuniam money famae to reputation—pecunia, fama. Potest she can obtrudi be thrust upon nemini nobody—possum, obtrudor, nemo. Periculum danger impendet hangs over omnibus all—impendeo, omnis. Interfuit he was present at negotio the business—intersum, negotium. Satisfaciam I will satisfy tibi you—satisfacio. Alius one praestat exceeds alium another—praesto. Insunt there are vitia weaknesses in amore in love—insum, vitium, amor. Est mihi I have pater a father. Suppetit mihi I have pecunia money—suppeto. Est it is, or brings voluptati a pleasure mihi to me—voluptas. Vertis you impute hoc this vitio as a fault mihi to me—verto, vitium. Dedit he gave vestem his garment mihi to me pignori for a pawn—do, vestis, pignus.

Dono I present hoc munus this gift tibi to you: Dono I present te you hoc munere with this gift. Aspersit he cast labem a blemish mihi upon me: Aspersit he aspersed me me labe with a blemish—aspergo, labe. Instravit he threw penulam his cloak equo upon his horse:

horse: Instravit *he covered* equum *his horse* penulâ *with his cloke*—*inferno*, penula, equus. Impertio *I send* tibi *you* salutem *health*, or *my compliments*: Impertio te salute *the same*—salus. Tempero, moderor *I govern* tibi et *and* te *you*. Refero *I refer*, scribo *I write*, mitto *I send* tibi vel *or* ad te *to you*. Haec *these things* non conveniunt *don't go right* fratri *with my brother* and me—convenio, frater. Saevus urbis convenit *the savage bears agree* inter se *with one another*—convenit *imperf.*

Consulo *I advise* tibi *you*. Consulo te *I ask advice of you*. Consulis *you order* istuc *that matter* pessimè *very ill* in illum *against him*—isthic Metuo, timeo, formido, caveo *I am in fear, or solicitous* tibi vel *or* te de *for you*: Metuo, timeo, formido *I am in fear* te vel *or* a te *of you*. Do tibi literas *I send a letter by you*: Do ad te literas *I send a letter to you*—literae *pl.* Ausculto *I obey* tibi *you*: Ausculto *I hear* te *you*.

VERBS with an ACCUSATIVE CASE.

Fugito *avoid* percontatorem *an inquisitive person*—fugio, percontator. Ire *to be going* viam *a journey*—eo, via. Servit *he serves* duram servitutem *a hard service*—servio, servitus. Vivere *to live* diu vitâ *a long life*—vivo. Ire *to go* rectâ viâ *the direct way*. Obiit *he is dead*—obeo, mors. Posce *ask* Deum *God* veniam *pardon*—posco, Deus, venia. Doceo *I teach* te *you* literas *letters*—litera. Induit se *he put on* calceos *his shoes*—induo, calceus. Celat *he conceals* id *it* me *from me*—celo. Oremus *let us beg* veniam *the favour* ab ipso *of him*—oro, ipse. Induo *I cloathe* te *you* tunicâ *with a coat*: Induo tibi *I put you on* tunicam *a coat*.

VERBS with an ABLATIVE CASE.

Ferit *he strikes* me *me* gladio *with a sword*—ferio, gladius. Taceo *I am silent* metu *for fear*—metus. Egredior *he pleaded* causam *the cause* summâ eloquentiâ *with very great eloquence*—ago, superus. Baccharis *you rave* prae ebrietate *through drunkenness*—bacchor, ebrietas. Tractavit *he treated* hominem *the man* cum summâ humanitate *with the highest courtesy*—tracto, homo, humanitas. Emi *I bought* it teruncio *for a farthing*—emo, teruncius. Victoria *the victory* stetit *cost* multo sanguine *much blood*—sto, multus, sanguis. Triticum *wheat* venit *is sold* vili (pretio) *at a low rate*—vенеo, vilis. Eris *you will be* tanti *of such value* aliis *to others*, quanti *as fueris* *you are* tibi *to yourself*—sum, tantus, alius, quantus. Ego pendo *I value* illum *him* flocci *as a lock of wool or lint*—floccus. Non facio *I don't regard* te *you* hujus *this*. Aestimat *he esteems* me *me* pili (not) *of*

of an hair—*aestimo*, *pilus*. *Aestimabat* he valued *pecuniam* money *magni* at a great rate—*magnus*. *Pendo* I reckon it *parvi* little worth—*parvus*. *Abundas* you abound *amore* with what you love—*amor*. *Explevit* he filled *suos* his (friends) *divitiis* with riches—*expleo*, *divitiae* *pl.* *Onerant* they load te you *mendaciis* with lies—*mendacium*. *Indiget* he wants *pecuniâ* money—*indigeo*. *Ego levabo* I will ease te you *hoc fasce* of this burden—*levo*, *fascis*. *Spoliavit* he plundered me *me bonis* of my goods—*spolio*, *bonum*. *Abundans* abounding *lactis* in milk—*abundo*, *lac*. *Indiget* he has need *patris* of his father. *Implentur* they are filled *Bacchi* with wine—*impleor*, *Bacchus*. *Eget* he wants *defensionis* defence—*egeo*, *detentio*. *Fungantur* let them discharge *officiis* their duties—*officium*. *Fruimur* we profit *alienâ insaniâ* by another's madness. *Abutitur* he abuses *patientiâ nostrâ* our patience. *Vescor* I eat *carnibus* flesh—*caro*. *Decet* it becomes us *niti* to rely on *virtute* virtue—*virtus*. *Meritus est* he has deserved *bene* well *de me* of me. *Accepi* I received *litteras* a letter *a patre* from my father—*accipio*. *Audivi* I heard *ex nuncio* by the messenger—*nuncius*. *Longè distat* he is a great way distant *a nobis* from us. *Eripui* I delivered te thee *e malis* from evils—*cripio*, *malum*. *Eripuit illi* he took from him *vitam* his life. *Multo praestat* it is much better *cavere* to avoid—*multum*, *praestat* *imperf.* *caveo*. *Vincit* he excels te you *multis gradibus* by many degrees—*vinco*, *multus*, *gradus*. *Christus* Christ *natus est* *is* is born *imperante* *Augusto* when Augustus was emperor—*nascor*, *impero*. *Me duce* I being captain, *vinces* thou shalt overcome—*dux*, *vinco*. *Agrotat* he is sick *animo* in mind—*animus*. *Aeger* distemper'd *pedibus* in his feet, *vel* *ex pedes*—*pes*. *Rubet* he is red *capillos* as to his hair, *or* his hair is red. *Aethiops* an Ethiopian *albus* white *dentes* as to his teeth—*dens*. *Discrucior* I am tormented *animi* in mind—*discrucio*. *Desipiebam* *mentis* I doted—*desipio* (to be unwise) *mens* (the understanding). *Dedit* he gave *vestem* his garment *mihi* to me *propriâ manu* with his own hand *pignori* for a pawn—*do*, *vestis*, *manus*, *pignus*.

VERBS Passive.

Laudatur he is praised *ab omnibus* by all—*laudo*, *omnis*. *Vapularis* you will be beaten *a praeceptore* by the master—*vapulo*, *praeceptor*. *Non cernitur* he is not seen *ulli* by any one—*cerno*, *ullus*. *Accusaris* you are accused *furti* of theft *a me* by me—*accuso*, *furtum*. *Dedocoberis* you shall be untaught *istos mores* those manners *a me* by me—*dedoceo*, *mos*. *Privaberis* you shall be deprived *magistratu* of your office—*privo*, *magistratus*.

VERBS Infinitive.

Cupio I desire discere *to learn*—disco. *Iustus being ordered* confundere *to violate* foedus *the treaty*—jubeo, confundo. *Dignus* worthy amari *to be loved*. Hinc upon this spargere (*he began*) to scatter in vulgum abroad voces ambiguas doubtful sayings—spargo, vulgus, vox, ambiguus.

GERUNDS and SUPINES.

Otium leisure scribendi of writing literas letters—scribo. Ad consulendum to consult tibi for thee—consulo. Auditum to hear poetas the poets.

GERUNDS.

Amor the desire habendi of having or getting—habeo. Certus resolv'd eundi to go—eo. Licentia liberty permessa est was granted diripiendi pomorum to scramble for fruit—permitto, diripio, pomum. Deterrentur they are discouraged a discendo from learning—deterreo, disco. Consultat he consults de transeundo about passing over—transeo. Gloria glory comparatur is gotten ex defendendo by defending—comparo, defendo. Petam I will demand mercedem wages pro vapulando for being beaten—peto, merces, vapulo. Disces you will learn scribere to write scribendo by writing—disco, scribo. Semen seed utile fit serendo for sowing—utilis, sero. Inter coenandum at supper time—coeno. Ante domandum before they are tamed. Locus a place ad agendum to plead in—ago. Vigilandum to watch est is (necesse necessary) ei to him, or he must watch. Abeundum est mihi I must go hence—abeo. Gloria the glory generandi mellis of making honey—generandus, mel. Ne delecteris be not delighted criminibus inferendis in bringing accusations—delecto, crimen, inferendus.

SUPINES.

Milites the soldiers missi sunt were sent speculatum to take a view—miles, mitto, speculor. Foedum dishonourable factu to be done—foedus, facio. Turpe indecent dictu to be spoken—turpis, dico.

TIME.

Mendae blemishes latent are concealed nocte in the night—lateo, nox. Creatus est he was made consul consul id tempus about that time—creo, is, tempus. Regnabitur kings shall reign ter centum annos three hundred years—regnatur imperf. annus. Imperavit he ruled triennio three years—triennium. Tertio vel or ad tertium on the third calendas vel or calendarum of the calends.

SPACE of PLACE.

Procefferam I had advanced mille passus a mile—procédo. Abest he is distant bidui spatium two days journey—absum, biduum, spatium, Quid faciam what should I do Romae at Rome—facio. Habitabat she dwelt Rhodi at Rhodes—Rhodus. Humi upon the ground, domi at home, militiae in war, belli in war: Bos the ox procumbit lieth humi on the ground—procumbo, humus. Viximus we lived simul together domi at home bellicque and in war—vivo, bellum. Genitus born Tiburi at Tibur—Tibur. Nutritus brought up Thebis at Thebes—nutrio, Thebae pl. Habitat he lives ruri or rure in the country—rus. Eo I go Londinum to London. Concessi I went Cantabrigiam to Cambridge—concedo. Ego ibo I will go rus into the country. Ite domum go home. Profectus est he went Româ from Rome—proficiscor. Exiit he went domo from home—exeo. Rediit he returned rure from the country—redeo. Versatur he is often in foro in the market—versor, forum. Vivo I live in Angliâ in England. Ibant they went ad templum to church. Ibis you will go per mare by sea ad Indos to the Indies—Indi pl. Discessit he departed e Sicilia from Sicily—discedo.

IMPERSONALS.

Interest it concerns magistratûs the magistrate. Refert it concerns reipublicae the state—reipublica. Tua refert it concerns you nosse to know, teipsum yourself—nosco, tuipse. Interest it concerns patris my father parvi little. Vestra refert it concerns you magni much. Benefic nobis we enjoy blessings a Deo from God. Juvat it delights me ire to travel per mare by sea. Atcinet it belongs, pertinet it pertains, spectat it concerns. Quidem truly me pudet I am ashamed pigetque and am sorry for fratris my brother—frater. Poenitet eum he is sorry for peccati his fault—peccatum. Incipit pudere me I begin to be ashamed. Desinit aedere illum he ceases to be weary studii of study. Taedere solet avaros covetous men use to be grieved impendii at expence—taedet, avarus, impendium.

PARTICIPLES.

Tendens spreading palmas his hands ad sidera towards heaven—tendo, sidus. Diligendus to be loved ab omnibus by all—diligo. Formidatus dreaded Othoni by Otho. Exorandus to be prevailed upon mihi by me. Appetens greedy alieni of another man's, profusus lavish sui of his own. Perosus utterly hating segnitiam idleness—segnities. Exosus Deo hated by God. Prognata (a lady) born bonis parentibus of good parents.

ADVERBS

ADVERBS.

En habitum *behold his dress*—habitus. Ecce miserum *see the wretch*—miser. Ubi gentium—gens. Tunc temporis—tempus. Dixit *he spoke* optimè *the best* omnium *of all*—dico, benè, omnis. Propius *nearer* urbem *the city*—propè, urbs.⁷

CONJUNCTIONS.

Petrus *Peter* et Johannes *and John* precabantur *did pray* et docebant *and teach*. Emi *I bought* librum *the book* centum *for an hundred* pence et pluri *and more*—centum, plus. Vixi *I lived* Romæ, at Rome et Venetiis *and at Venice*—vivo, Venetiae pl. Gratia *thanks* et habetur *both are given* et referetur *and shall be given* tibi. you a me *by me*—habeo, refero. Quamvis *though* miretur *he wonders*—misor. Licet *though* venias *you come*.

IV. Discite *learn ye*, quae virtus *what a virtue* sit *it is* et quanta *and how great* vivere *to live* parvo *upon a little*.

PREPOSITIONS.

Habeo *I esteem* te *you* loco, id est *that is*, in loco *in the place* parentis *of a parent*—locus. Praetereo *I pass by* te *you*. Detrudunt *they thrust off* naves *the ships* scopulo *from the rock*—detrudo, navis, scopulus. Abstinuerunt *they abstained* a vino *from wine*—abstineo, vinum. Advocabo *I will call* amicos *my friends* ad hanc rem *to this business*. Conferemus *we will compare it* cum legibus *with the laws*—confero, lex.

INTERJECTIONS.

Hei alas vereor *I am afraid*—vereor dep. Me miserum *wretch that I am!*—miser. Heu stirpem invisam *ah the odious stock*—stirps, invisus. Pro sancte Jupiter *O sacred Jupiter*—sanctus.

⁷ The construing of the rest of the examples, and their radicals are omitted, as they may easily be known by the learner.

Impersonals and Verbs used as such, though some of them admit of a nom. of a person or thing, or both.

Accidit	it happens	contingit	it falls out
attinet	it belongs	convenit	it is agreed on
benefit	it happens well	debet	it becomes
competit	it is meet	dedecet	it ill becomes
conducit	it avails	dolet	it grieveth
constat	it is evident	evenit	it falls out
			expedit

<i>expedit</i>	<i>it is expedient</i>	<i>patet</i>	<i>it is manifest</i>
<i>fulurat</i>	<i>it lightens</i>	<i>pertinet</i>	<i>it pertains</i>
<i>gelascit</i>	<i>it freezes</i>	<i>præstat</i>	<i>it is better</i>
<i>ignoscitur</i>	<i>it is forgiven</i>	<i>piget</i>	<i>it irks</i>
<i>incidit</i>	<i>it happens</i>	<i>pudet</i>	<i>it shames</i>
<i>interest</i>	<i>it concerns</i>	<i>refert</i>	<i>it concerns</i>
<i>juvat</i>	<i>it delights</i>	<i>restat</i>	<i>it remains</i>
<i>libet</i>	<i>it pleases</i>	<i>satisfit</i>	<i>satisfaction is made</i>
<i>libet</i>		<i>stat</i>	<i>it is resolved</i>
<i>licet</i>	<i>it is lawful</i>	<i>studetur</i>	<i>it is studied</i>
<i>liquet</i>	<i>it is clear</i>	<i>sufficit</i>	<i>it suffices</i>
<i>malefit</i>	<i>it happens ill</i>	<i>superest</i>	<i>it remains</i>
<i>miseret</i>	<i>it pities</i>	<i>taedet</i>	<i>it makes weary</i>
<i>miserescit</i>		<i>vacat</i>	<i>there is leisure</i>
<i>nocet</i>	<i>it hurts</i>	<i>vesperascit</i>	<i>it draws towards</i>
<i>obest</i>	<i>it is prejudicial</i>		<i>(evening</i>
<i>oportet</i>	<i>it behoves</i>	<i>vivitur</i>	<i>men live</i>

⚡ Impersonals generally want Gerunds, Supines and Participles.
Shawe.

ARTICLE XVII.

PROSODY.

OF syllables disposed in proper order are made certain poetic measures called *feet*.

A *foot* is made of *two* or *three* syllables with due regard to their *quantity*.¹

Feet of *two* syllables.

A Spondee; both syllables long, as

vīrtūs.

A Pyrrich; both short, as

Deūs.

A Trochee; one long; one short, as

pānis.

An Iambic; one short: one long, as

āmāns.

Feet of *three* syllables.

A Dactyl; one long: two short; as

scribēre.

An Anapaest; two short; one long; as

piētās.

¹ Some syllables in regard of quantity are common, *i. e.* sometimes long and sometimes short; as *senēbrae*; but in prose always short.

A Companion to the Rudiments

A Moloss; three long; as

A Tribrach; three short; as

A Bacchius; one short: two long; as

Antibacchius; two long: one short; as

Amphimacer; first and last long: middle short; as

Amphibrachys; first and last short; middle long; as

cācē|fās.
dōmī|nūs.
hōnē|tās.
audī|rē.
chārī|tās.
venī|rē.

Of a proper number of *feet* placed in due order, is made a *verse*.

Of Verses the most usual kinds are seven; *viz.* an Hexameter, a Pentameter, an Asclepiad, a Sapphic, a Phaleucian, an Iambic, and an Alcaic.

1. An *Hexameter* or Heroic verse consists of six feet, dactyls or spondees; but the fifth should always be a dactyl to make the verse run smooth, and the sixth is always a spondee; as

Tītūrē | tū pātū|lāc rēcū|bāns ' sūb | tēgmīnē|fāgī. *Virg.*

Sometimes we find a spondee in the fifth place, and the verse is called a spondaic; as

Cārā dē|ūm fōbō|lēs, māg|nūm Jōvis | īncrē|mēntūm. *Virg.*

2. A *Pentameter* or Elegiac verse consists of two penthemims, each penthemim being two feet, dactyls or spondees, (or one of each sort) with a long syllable; but the latter-penthemim always two dactyls and a long syllable; as

Rēs ēst | fōlīcī|tī | plēnā tī|mōi's ā|mōr. *Ovid.*

☞ An *heroic* verse generally begins with a penthemim; sometimes with a *heptamim* or three feet and a long syllable; otherwise it is barely an *hexameter*.

3. An *Asclepiad* hath its feet in this order, *viz.* a spondee, a dactyl, a long syllable, then two dactyls; as

Moēcē|nās ātā|vīs | ēdītē | rēgībūs.

4. A *Sapphic* consists of a trochee, a spondee, a dactyl, then two trochees; as

Intē|gēr vī|taē, scēlē|rīsquē | pūrūs.

☞ After three of these verses an *adonic* is added, which consists of a dactyl and a spondee; as

Fūscē phā|rētrā.

5. A *Phaleucian* verse contains eleven syllables in this order; a spondee, a dactyl, then three trochees; as

Hīc ēst|quēm lēgis, | illē|quēm rē|quīris,
Tōtō | nōtūs īn | ōrbē | Mārtī|ālīs.

6. An *Iambic* verse is either *pure* or *mixt*.

1. A *pure* iambic verse consists of iambic feet only; as

Sūis | ēt īp|sā Rō|mā vī|rībūs | rūit.

2. A *mixt* iambic in the odd places, (that is, in the first, third and fifth places) admits a spondee, or some foot equal to it; but

but in the even (second and fourth) places, only an iambic or some foot equal to it, and is either Dimeter *i. e.* of four feet, or Trimeter *i. e.* of six feet

Trimeter. Aī ō|dēō|rūm quī|quīs īn|caēlō | rēgīs.

Dimeter. Tērrās | ēt hū|manūm | gēnūs.¹

N. B. Terence and Phaedrus take the liberty of putting a spondee or any foot equal to it, in any place, *viz* a proceleusmatic (or four short syllables) a dactyl, or an anapaest—also a tribrach for an iambic, upon this supposition; That a long syllable is equal to two short ones.

7. An *Alcaic* verse consists of a penthemimer, that is, a spondee, an iambic, and a long syllable; and lastly two dactyls—and sometimes of two dactyls and two trochees; as

Fōrtēs | crēan|tūr | fōrtībūs | ēt bōnīs,
Arbitrī|ō pōpū|larīs | āuraē.

Scanning a verse is the dividing it into its proper feet: It admits of the following figures;

1. *Synaloepha* cuts off a vowel or diphthong in the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel or diphthong;² as,

Cōnīcū|lēre ōm|nēs, īn|tēntī|que ōrā tē|nēbānt.

Note. This figure is sometimes neglected, and long vowels and diphthongs are made either long or short; as,

Crēdīmūs | ān quī ā|mant īp|sībī | fōmniā | fīngūnt,

Insulāē | Iōnī|o īn mag|nō quās | dīrā Cēloēnō. *Virg.*

2. *Ecthlipsis* is the elision or cutting off *m* with its vowel in the end of a word, when the next begins with a vowel—and formerly *s* was cut off.

O cu|ras homi|num, O quan|tum est īn|rebus ī|nane.

3. *Caesura* is when there remains a syllable in the end of a word, after a foot is finished, which is the beginning of the next foot; as Sylves|trem tenui mu|sam medi|taris a|venā.

Obs. 1. The *hexameter* will not run smooth without a *caesura*.

Obs. 2. Though the last syllable of a word be short, yet being a *caesura*, it may be made long; as

Si nihil | attule|rīs, | ibis Ho|mere so|ras.

1 Versus ratione integritatis *acatalecticus* dicitur, cui nihil aut superest aut deest; *catalecticus*, cui in fine deest syllaba; *brachycatalecticus* cum in fine pes deest; *hypercatalecticus* vel *hypermeter*, in quo una aut duae syllabae supersunt.—Carmen ex uno versuum genere constans *monocolon* vocatur, ex duplici *dicolon*, ex triplici vero *tricolon*. Item pro numero versuum, ex quibus constat, priusquam reditus ad idem genus fiat, *distrophon*, *tristrophon*, *tetrasrophon* dicitur.

2 *Synaloepha* is sometimes found in the end of a verse, when the next begins with a vowel; as, *Omnia Mercurio simulis vocemque coloremque—et crines flavos.* *Virg.*—These verses are called *Hypermeter*.—*Ab, ut, ubi, pro, id* are never cut off.

4. *Synaeresis* is the contraction of two syllables of the same word into one; as *cui* for *cui*.

Omnia | pontus e|rant deē|rant quoque | littora | ponto.

5. *Diaeresis* contrariwise is the solution of one syllable into two; as, Suspectos laqueos, et opertum milvūs hamum, for milvus.

6. *Systole* ducta rapit correpta *Diastole* ducit.

Systole makes long syllables short: *Diastole* makes short syllables long; as *steterunt* for *steterunt*, *naufiāgia* for *naufrāgia*.

Of the QUANTITY of SYLLABLES.

The quantity of *first* and *middle* syllables is known by the following rules, and by the authority of the poets.

I. Vocalis ante alteram in eādē dictione positione brevis est; ut, *Dēus*, *pīus*.

Obs 1. Genitivi in *ius* sunt communes; ut *unius*, *illius*, &c. Excipe *alius* ubi *i* semper longum est: producuntur autem in prosā, praeter *alterius*.

Obs 2. *E* inter geminum *i* in quintā declinatione longum est; ut, *faciēi*.

Obs 3. *Fi* in *fio* longa est, nisi ante *er*; ut *fiunt*, *fiēri*.

Obs 4. Vocalis ante alteram in Graecis dictionibus subinde longa fit; ut, *Dicite Pierides*. *Respice Lāerten*.

II. Vocalis ante duas consonantes aut duplicem in eādē dictione vel diversis positione longa est; ut *vēntus*, *āxis*, *patrīzo*, *māior*; excipe *bijugis*, *quadrijugus*.

Obs. Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquidā, communis est; ut *Pātris*, *volūcris*: in prosā autem corripitur.

III. Omnis diphthongus, et syllaba contracta longa sunt *naturā*; ut, *aurum*, *musae*, *cōgo* pro *coago*, *bōbus* pro *bovibus*. Sed *prae* ante vocalem corripitur; ut *praeire*.

IV. Omne perfectum et supinum dissyllabum priorem habet longam; ut *mōvi*, *mōtum*: excipe *fidi* a *findo*, *bibi*, *dedi*, *scidi*, *steti*, *tuli*; et supina *itum*, *litum*, *quitum*, *sium*, *rutum*, *ratum*, *datum*, *fatum*, *flatum*, et *citum* a *cico*, *cies*.

V. Syllaba prima in perfecto geminata brevis est; ut, *cēcidi* a *cado*.

VI. Derivata et composita sequuntur quantitatem primitivorum et simplicium; ut *āmator*, *āmicus*, ab *āmo*, *perlēgo* a *lēgo*.

Obs. Sed derivata quaedam a primitivis variant; ut, *innūba*, pro-

3 *Pompei Cai* et similes vocativi; item *aulai*, *pillai*, &c. genitivi prisca, penultimum producunt; *diūs*, *then* priorem habent longam, *obe* communem—*Diana* primam habet communem.

nūba a nūbo, dejēro, pejēro a jūro; et contra lex legis a lēgo, vox vōis a vōco, &c.

VII. Hæc prepositiones *a, de, e, se, pro,*⁴ *di*, longae sunt in compositione, nisi ante vocalem, reliquae corripuntur nisi obstat positio.

Mediae Syllabae partim superioribus regulis, partim ex incrementis Genitivi, atque analogiâ Conjugationis cognosci possunt.

In primâ, quartâ et quintâ declinatione nullum fit numero singulari incrementum, nisi vocalis vocalem praecedat, de quo supra dictum est.

In secundâ declinatione.

REG. Quae sequitur primam tantum producit Ibēri.¹

In tertiâ declinatione.

REG. I. Semper A curtat *atis* ternae;² fit Dogmātis index.

2. O breviabit *inis*;³ sed porrigit *enis* et *onis*.⁴

3. I breve mittit *itis*;⁵ sed ab EC producitur *ecis*.⁶

4. AL mas curtat *alis*;⁷ sed neutrum protrahit *alis*.⁸

*Elis*⁹ cum *Solis* produc, reliquis breviatis.

5. ON nimis incertum est;¹⁰ EN *inis* rape,¹¹ caetera produc.¹²

6. *Aris* ab AR neutro produc;¹³ sed demito *bacchar*,

Par cum compositis; *jubar* his cum *nectare* jungas:

Protrahe NAK *Naris, furis, veris, Ricimeris,*

Byzer, Ser et *Iber*; in *-ter* Graecum,¹⁴ *aethere* demito;

7. *Oris* ab OR longum est;¹⁵ cum neutris corripe Graeca;¹⁶

Arboris et *memoris* brevies, indictaque¹⁷ cuncta.

4 Pro brevis est in his, *Procella, profanus, profari, profecto, profestus, proficiscor, profiteor, profugio, profugus, profundus, pronepos, protervus*: Sed *praeuro, profundo, propello, propina, propulso, propago* et *Proserpina* primam habent communem. Di brevis est in *dirimio* et *discreus*.

1 Incrementa adae declinationis corripuntur; ut *puer pueri, vir viri, &c.* at *Iber Iberi, Celtiber Celtiberi*—2 Nomina in A tertiae penultimam genitivi in *atis* corripunt.—3 Ut *cardo cardinis*—4 Ut *Anjo Antenis, Cicero Ciceronis*: Sed Gentilia quaedam penultimam corripunt; ut *Macedo Macedonis, Saxones, Lingones, Teutones* seu *Tentorii, Senones, Vangiones, Vastones*. *Britones* Juvēali corripitur, *Martiali* producitur. *Suessones, Vettanes* penult. habent longam; sic *Burgundiones, Eburones*.—5 a meli composita.—6 ut *halec halecis*.—7 ut *sal salis*.—8 ut *animal animalis*.—9 Hebraica ut *Daniel*.—10 Quaedam producant penult. ut *Helicon onis, Chiron onis*: Multa corripunt; ut *Aethaeon onis, Mermon onis, &c.*—11 *Tib. en inis, flumen inis*.—12 ut *Elcan anis, Siron enis, uelphin inis, Phocyn ynis*—13 ut *calcar aris*.—14 *Crater oris*—15 ut *labor oris*.—16 *aquor, Hector*.—17 Reliqua in R penult. Genit. vel corripunt, ut *Caesar aer, pulcr, martyr*.

8. *Atis*

8. *Atis* ab *AS* tardant,¹⁸ *anātis* nisi, quaeque Latina;
Caetera (sed *vasis* demto) correpta dabuntur.¹⁹
9. *ES* breviter crescit;²⁰ *demās locuplesque quiesque*
Et *haeres, merces, mansues*, et Graeca per *etis*.²¹
10. *IS* breviter crescit genitivo;²² porrige, *gliris*,
Psophis Psophidis, sic cuncta Latina per *itis*.²³
11. *OS* longum crescit;²⁴ brevies *bos, compos et impos*.
12. *US* clementa rapit; sed in *uris et utis et udis*
Quod praeit *u* longum est; *Ligus* hinc at tolle *pecusque*
Intercusque; Gradus medius producit *US oris*.²⁵
13. *YS* celerabit *ydos*; ²⁶ sed tardē proferet *ynis*.²⁷
14. Consona cum praeit *s*, patrii penultima curta est;²⁸
Hinc *Cyclops, Cercops, seps, gryps, plebs* aufer, et *hydrops*.
15. *T* breve clementum patrii per *itis* sibi poscit.²⁹
16. Prae -*gis* vocalem rapit *x*.³⁰ Producito *lex, rex*.
EX, icis abbreviat³¹ *vibex* nisi; caetera produc;³²
Exceptis paucis,³³ melius quae discimus usu.

De Plurali nominis incremento.

17. Pluralis casus, si crescit, protrahit *A, E*,
Et simul *O*:³⁴ *Bubus* sed demto, corripit *I, U*.³⁵

De incrementis Verborum.¹

1. *A* simul *E* longum, verbo crescente notabis,²
At fit *E* correptum prae -*ram, rim, roque* locatum:
Prima *E* ante *R* corripiunt duo tempora ternae;³
Rere fit et *reris* longum, *beris* et *bere* curtum.
2. Corripit *I* crescens verbum;⁴ sed deme *velimus*,
Nolimus, simus, quaeque his fata⁵ caetera; jungas

¹⁸ *Pietas ntis*.—¹⁹ *mas, maris*; et Graeca in *adis, anis* et *atis*: *Pallas, adis*,
Melas, anis, fluvii nomen, *artocreas, atis*.—²⁰ *comes, itis*.—²¹ *lebes, etis*.—²² *lapis*,
idis.—²³ *lis litis*.—²⁴ *labos, oris*.—²⁵ *melius, oris*.—²⁶ *chlamys, yaos*.—²⁷ *Trachys*.
—²⁸ *trabs*.—²⁹ *caput*.—³⁰ *Phryx*.—³¹ *judex icis*.—³² *pax cis, halex ecis, rauix icis*,
vox cis, lux cis, bombyx cis.—³³ ut *Abax, Atax, Atrax, anthrax, climax, crux, appen-*
atix, calix, Cappadox, Cilix, colax, curax, coxendix; dropax, aux, Eryx, fax, filix, hy-
strix, larix, mustyx, natrux, nex, Naryx, nix, nux, onyx, panax, phylax, pix, praetox,
Styrax, similax, trux; et recto carentia vicis et precis: at variantur *Syphax, Bebryx,*
Sandayx.—³⁴ *misarum, rerum, dominorum*.—³⁵ *artibus* ab *ars*, *artibus* ab *artus*.—¹
Verborum incrementa ex ultimā secundae singularis praesentis indicativi activi dedu-
cuntur; sic *amamus* ab *amas* unum habet incrementum, *amabamus* duo, nam ultima
nunquam dicitur incrementum.—² *A* et *E* incrementa producuntur, ut *stabam, aud-*
rem, legebamur, audiebamus; exiipe *do* et ejus composita, ut *damus, dare, circumsa-*
mus, &c. *amemus, amavimus, docemus, docebam, legebat, legerunt, audiemus*.—³ *E*
ante *r* breve est in primo incremento cujusvis praesentis et imperf. tertiae conjugati-
onis, ut *legeris, legere, legeram, legeret*.—⁴ *amabimus, docebitur, legimus*.—⁵ *possimus,*
adsumus.

- Ivi praeteritum, prima incrementaque quartae :⁶
Praeterito curtabis imus, rimus, adde ritisque ;
Sed producta legis rimus ritisque futuro.*
3. O produc verbis crescentibus : U breve⁷ profer.

Regulae de Ultimis syllabis.

I. Finita in *-a, i, u, c, as, es, os* longa sunt.

EXCEPTIONES.

1. Casibus A flexum brevia ; sed protrahe sextum,¹
Et quintum² Graeco quando hic de nomine in *-as* fit ;
Sic *puta* non verbum brevies, *ita* cum *quia* et *eja* :³
Sed variant *-ginta* omnia, et *ultra, postea, contra*.⁴
2. I breve dant nisi cum *quasi, sicuti* : Plurima Graeca :⁵
Communes *mibi, ubi, sibi, ibi, tibi* ; junge *cuique*.⁶
3. C breve *lac, nec, donec* ; at ancipites *hic, hoc*,⁷ *fac*.
4. AS quod *adis*⁸ breve fit ; et *anas*, Pluralia ternae.⁹
5. ES ternae breviter crescentia¹⁰ corripuntur,
Graecaque plurali crescentia ;¹¹ et *es*,¹² *penes* ; hoc *-es*.¹³
Ancipites *Ceres, abies, aries, paries, pes*.
6. OS breve dant *Paridos, Tethyos* ; sic *Delos* et *Arctos* ;¹⁴
Compos, os ossis et *impos* ; item neutralia Graeca.¹⁵

II. Finita in *e, b, d, l, n, r, is*,¹⁶ *us, t* brevia sunt.

EXCEPTIONES.

1. E longum primae,¹⁷ quintae,¹⁸ monosyllaba ; et *aude* ;¹⁹
Plinè cum sociis ;²⁰ *obè, fermèque, fameque*,²¹
Atque ferè, quare, Tempe, ceteque, meleque :²²

⁶ *audimus, auairo, &c.* at *imus* in omni praeterito, etiam quartae conjugationis corripitur, ut *juvimus, vidimus, fecimus, venimus* ; et incremento secundo, *amavimus, adjuvimus, audivimus* : Notandum igitur in verbis 4tae, quorum praesens et praeteritum concurrunt, penultimam praesentis esse longam ; ut *venimus, reperimus*, praeteriti autem brevem, ut *venimus, reperimus*.—⁷ *sumus, volumus* : sed produc *urus* et *urum*—⁸ A finalis in vocibus per casus declinatis corripitur, ut *musæ, templæ, lampadæ* ; excipe ablativum primae declinationis, ut hac *musæ*, hoc *Aeneæ*.—⁹ Vocativum, ut *O Aenea, O Palla*.—¹⁰ Hae particulae *ita, quia, eja*, et *puta* adverbialiter sumta ult. corripunt.—¹¹ Numeralia in *-ginta* interdum corripuntur, sic *ultra, postea, contra*.—¹² ut *Palladi, Moeri, Moly* ; excipe latina 3tae ex Graecis primae, ut *Euripidi, Orissi*.—¹³ *cui* dissyllabum.—¹⁴ Sc. Pronomina ; sed hoc ablativo longa est.—¹⁵ *Pallas, Palladis*.—¹⁶ ut *heros*—¹⁷ ut *praepes, etis*.—¹⁸ ut *Arcades, Pleiades*.—¹⁹ a *sum*.—²⁰ neutra ut *cacoethes, hippomanes*.—²¹ et caetera quae per omicron graecè scribuntur.—²² ut *Chaos, melos, Argos, &c.*—²³ sic *ys* : at *Tethys* anceps ; quae vero exeunt in *ys* et *yu* in recto casu longa sunt, ut *Goræys, Phorcys*.—²⁴ ut *Niobe*.—²⁵ ut *die, re* et adverbia ab iis composita, ut *hodie, pridie, postridie, quotidie, quare*.—²⁶ et caetera 2dae conjugationis.—²⁷ Sc. adverbii a nominibus 2dae declinationis manantibus, ut *placide, pulchrè, valde*, quod ex *valide* contractum est.—²⁸ quippe quintae apud veteres.—²⁹ quippe ex *ita* r.

- Corripis Encliticas,²³ *malè cum benè; sic magè, ritè:*
Ancipites cavè; salvè, valè, respondè, vidèque,
Infernè, longè, clarè, infernèque, supernè.
2. L duc *sal, sol, nil; Hebraeaeque nomina, ut Abel.*²⁴
3. N Graecis longum est;²⁵ *en, sin; monosyllaba quin, non.*
4. Producas *far, Lar, Nar, par, ver, cur, et Iber, fur;*
*Cor fors Naso semel,*²⁶ *ter teris,*²⁷ *et æer aether.*
5. IS plurali longum est; IS *ine, itis et ontis;*
*Audis cum sociis;*²⁸ *velis, fis, sis, vis, et glis.*
6. Producas US *udis,*²⁹ *et utis, et uris, et untis:*³⁰
*Sic monosyllaba in us;*³¹ *quartae sic us*³² *genitivo,*
*Tres similes casus plurales addere possis,*³³
*Ac casus graecos,*³⁴ *et sanctum nomen Iesus.*

III. O finita communia sunt.

EXCEPTIONES.

1. Duc monosyllaba in O; sic nomina cuncta secundae.³⁵
2. *Ergo pro causâ* produc; *modo* sed breve pones.
3. Saepius *ambo duo* et *scio* corripis, *illico* et *imo,*
Et cedo da signans, *ego,* *queis homo* cum *cito* jungas.
- N. B. Ultima cujusque est communis syllaba versus.³⁶

²³ *que, ne, ve, pote, pte, te.*—²⁴ Sic *Daniel, Michael, Gabriel.*—²⁵ *Hymen, Aenean, Maconiden.*—²⁶ Semel apud Ovid. *Molle meum levibus cor est violabile telis.*—²⁷ ut *crater.*—²⁸ causa est contractio, nam ab *audio* integrè fit *audiis.*—²⁹ at *palus* Hor. A. P. 65—³⁰ ut *virtus, tellus, opus.*—³¹ ut *jus, crus, &c.*—³² ut *hujus gradus.*—³³ ut *hi, hos fluctus.*—³⁴ Sc. genitivos *Sapphus, Clius, Mantus, &c.* a nominativis in *o,* et si quae vocativum in *n* mittunt, ut *Panthus, O Panthu.*—³⁵ Huic declinationi ascribi possunt graeca feminina in *o,* ut *Clio, Sappho, &c.* item masculina Atticae dialecti in *ω5,* ut *Androgeos geo, Athos Atho, &c.* quae omnia habent *o* longum.—³⁶ Hoc igitur pacto pro longâ poni potest brevis, ut in hoc Hexamet. Virgilii,

Gens inimica mihi Tyrrhenum navigat aequor.

Et contra pro brevi poni potest longa, ut in hoc Sapphico Horatii,

Crescit occulto velut arbor aevo.

Ultimus enim pes Trochaeus est, qui constat ex longa et brevi.

A P P E N D I X.

1. **PATRONYMICA** masculina in *-ides* vel *-ades* penultimam fere corripunt, ut *Priamides, Attantiades:* Excipe formata a nominibus in *-eus,* ut *Pelides;* item *Belides Lycurgides.*

2. Patronymica atque iis cognata in *-ais, -eis, -ois, -itis, -otis, -ine, -one* penultimam fere producant, ut *Ptolemais, Nerine.*

3. Adjectiva

3. Adjectiva in *-acus, -icus, -idus, -imus* penult. plerumque habent brevem, ut *dæmoniacus, academicus, solidus, legitimus*; et superlativa, ut *optimus, pulcherrimus*: Excipe *opacus, amicus, apricus, pudicus, mendicus, poslicus, opimus*; et duo superlativa, *primus* et *imus*.

4. Adjectiva in *-alis*, et pieraque omnia in *-anus, -arus, -ivus, -orus* penultimam producant, ut *dotalis, urbanus, avarus, aestivus, canorus*: Excipe *barbarus, opiparus*.

5. Adjectiva in *-ilis* verbalia penultimam corripunt, ut *agilis, facilis, utilis*; at derivata a nominibus penultimam producant, ut *anilis, servilis, herilis*; item mensium nomina, ut *Aprilis, Quinilis, Sextilis*; excipe *parilis, humilis, similis*: Caetera omnia in *-atilis*, penult. breviant, ut *versatilis, volatilis*.

6. Adjectiva in *-inus* et *-ius* penultimam producant; ut *matutinus, formosus* præter materialia et hæc sequentia, *crastinus, diutinus, perendinus, pristinus, hornotinus, serotinus*.

7. Diminutiva in *-ulus, -ula, -olum, et -ulus, -ula, -alum* penult. semper corripunt, ut *uraculus, filicula, corculum*.

8. Denominativa in *-aceus, -aneus, -arius, -aticus, -orius*; item verbalia in *-abilis* et in *-atilis* undecumque derivata antepenultimam producant, ut *testaceus, fabitaneus, cibarius, aquaticus, censorius, amabilis, pluvialis*.

9. Adjectiva in *-icius*, quæ a nominibus proveniunt, antepenultimam corripunt, ut *patricius*; excipe *noicius* seu *noctius*: At quæ a supinis vel participiis descendant, antepenult. producant; ut *suppositivus*.

10. Verba Desiderativa in *-urus* antepenult. (quæ in 2da et 3ta personâ penult. est) corripunt, ut *parturio, parturis*: Alia in *-urus* eam syllabam producant, ut *ligurio, scaturio, scaturis*.

11. Adverbia in *-tim* penult. habent longam; ut *oppidatim, virritim*: Excipe *affatim, perpetim, et statim*.—Rudiman.

AUCTORITAS.

Reg. Primarum vel mediarum syllabarum quantitas superioribus regulis non determinata, a poetarum usu, exemplo, et auctoritate petenda est, certissimâ omnium regula.